

#### **Expand Your World Through Language**

#### PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

# Basic English

- Make confident first steps in English
- Learn basic vocabulary and grammar in bite-sized lessons
- Practice your new skills with plenty of entertaining exercises

**Julie Lachance** 

am, you are, h he is, it is, we a hey are, I am re he is my friend, we are tired, they is true, to have, o say, to go, I go ou go, she goes goes, he goes, went, you went e went, it went hey went, his, I ts, yours, theirs hine, my, me, yo her, it, us, them hese, those, to o try, to like, wl ho, when, whe how, why, I mail e ate it quickly e visit her ever summer, spring, utumn, winter, t esterday, tomor he is afraid, she an work, they ca ome, you believe

oes he know th

www.ebook3000.com



## Basic English

#### **Julie Lachance**



Copyright © 2009 by Julie Lachance. All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

ISBN: 978-0-07-177170-2

MHID: 0-07-177170-0

The material in this eBook also appears in the print version of this title: ISBN: 978-0-07-159762-3,

MHID: 0-07-159762-X.

E-book conversion by codeMantra

Version 2.0

All trademarks are trademarks of their respective owners. Rather than put a trademark symbol after every occurrence of a trademarked name, we use names in an editorial fashion only, and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark. Where such designations appear in this book, they have been printed with initial caps.

McGraw-Hill eBooks are available at special quantity discounts to use as premiums and sales promotions, or for use in corporate training programs. To contact a representative please e-mail us at bulksales@mcgraw-hill.com.

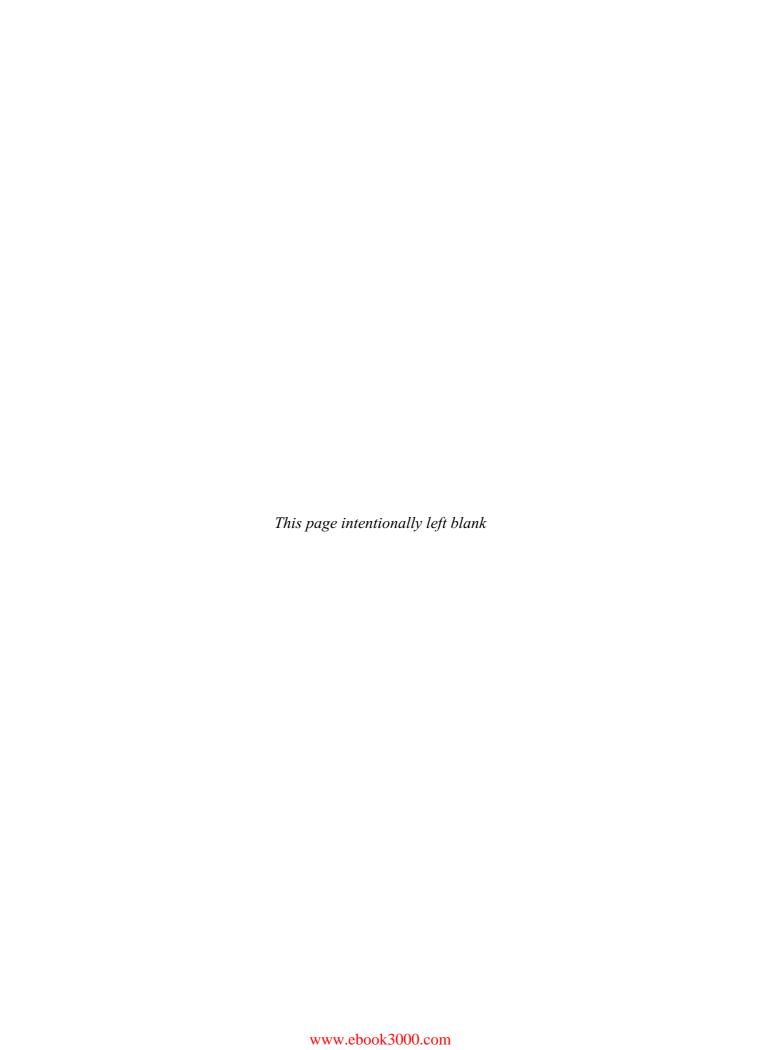
Trademarks: McGraw-Hill, the McGraw-Hill Publishing logo, Practice Makes Perfect, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of The McGraw-Hill Companies and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. The McGraw-Hill Companies is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

#### TERMS OF USE

This is a copyrighted work and The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. ("McGraw-Hill") and its licensors reserve all rights in and to the work. Use of this work is subject to these terms. Except as permitted under the Copyright Act of 1976 and the right to store and retrieve one copy of the work, you may not decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, reproduce, modify, create derivative works based upon, transmit, distribute, disseminate, sell, publish or sublicense the work or any part of it without McGraw-Hill's prior consent. You may use the work for your own noncommercial and personal use; any other use of the work is strictly prohibited. Your right to use the work may be terminated if you fail to comply with these terms.

THE WORK IS PROVIDED "AS IS." McGRAW-HILL AND ITS LICENSORS MAKE NO GUARANTEES OR WARRANTIES AS TO THE ACCURACY, ADEQUACY OR COMPLETENESS OF OR RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED FROM USING THE WORK, INCLUDING ANY INFORMATION THAT CAN BE ACCESSED THROUGH THE WORK VIA HYPERLINK OR OTHERWISE, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. McGraw-Hill and its licensors do not warrant or guarantee that the functions contained in the work will meet your requirements or that its operation will be uninterrupted or error free. Neither McGraw-Hill nor its licensors shall be liable to you or anyone else for any inaccuracy, error or omission, regardless of cause, in the work or for any damages resulting therefrom. McGraw-Hill has no responsibility for the content of any information accessed through the work. Under no circumstances shall McGraw-Hill and/or its licensors be liable for any indirect, incidental, special, punitive, consequential or similar damages that result from the use of or inability to use the work, even if any of them has been advised of the possibility of such damages. This limitation of liability shall apply to any claim or cause whatsoever whether such claim or cause arises in contract, tort or otherwise.

This book is dedicated to my students because they have taught and given me so much over the years.



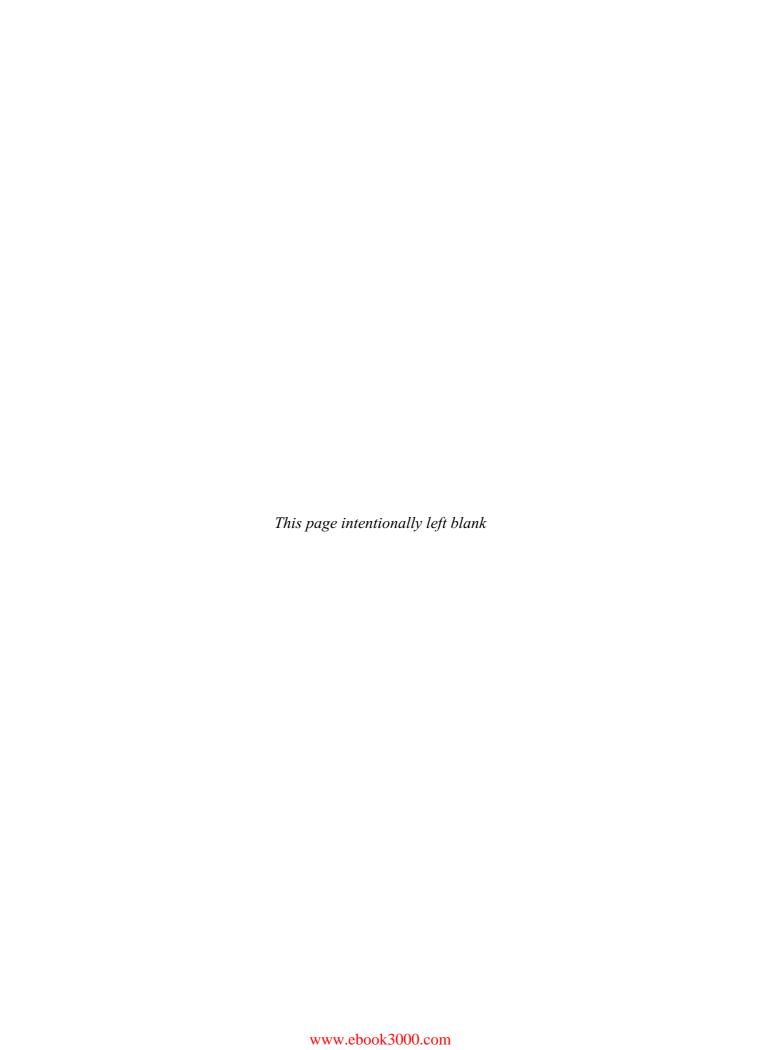
#### Contents

#### Introduction ix To Be: Present Tense 1 1 2 **To Be: Present Tense: Negative Form** 5 To Be: Present Tense: Question Form 9 3 4 To Be: Past Tense 12 5 To Be: Past Tense: Negative Form 15 6 To Be: Past Tense: Question Form 19 Exceptional Uses with the Verb To Be 22 7 8 Adjectives 26 To Have: Present Tense 29 To Have: Present Tense: Negative Form 32 10 11 To Have: Present Tense: Question Form 36 12 The Simple Present Tense 39 The Simple Present Tense: Negative Form 42 13 14 The Simple Present Tense: Question Form 45 15 Possessive Adjectives 48

- **16 The Simple Past Tense** 51
- 17 The Simple Past Tense with Irregular Verbs: 1 55
- 18 The Simple Past Tense with Irregular Verbs: 2 58
- 19 The Simple Past Tense with Irregular Verbs: 3 62
- 20 The Simple Past Tense: Negative Form 65
- 21 The Simple Past Tense: Question Form 68
- 22 Prepositions: In and On 71
- 23 There Is and There Are: Present Tense 74
- 24 There Is and There Are: Present Tense: Negative Form 78
- 25 There Is and There Are: Present Tense: Question Form 81
- 26 There Is and There Are: Past Tense 84
- 27 There Is and There Are: Past Tense: Negative Form 88
- 28 There Is and There Are: Past Tense: Question Form 91
- **29** Prepositions: To and At 95
- 30 The Present Progressive (Continuous) Tense 98
- 31 The Present Progressive (Continuous) Tense: Negative Form 102
- 32 The Present Progressive (Continuous) Tense: Question Form 105
- 33 The Past Progressive (Continuous) Tense 108
- 34 The Past Progressive (Continuous) Tense: Negative Form 112
- 35 The Past Progressive (Continuous) Tense: Question Form 115
- 36 Prepositions: From and Of 118

- 37 Will: Future Tense 122
- 38 Will: Future Tense: Negative Form 126
- 39 Will: Future Tense: Question Form 129
- **40** Be Going To: Future Tense 132
- 41 Be Going To: Future Tense: Negative Form 136
- **42** Be Going To: Future Tense: Question Form 139
- 43 The Indefinite Articles: A and An 143
- 44 Irregular Verbs Table 146
- 45 The Present Perfect Tense 149
- 46 The Present Perfect Tense: Negative Form 153
- 47 The Present Perfect Tense: Question Form 156
- 48 The Past Perfect Tense 159
- 49 The Past Perfect Tense: Negative Form 162
- 50 The Past Perfect Tense: Question Form 166

Answer Key 169



#### Introduction

Congratulations on your decision on choosing *Practice Makes Perfect: Basic English* for your first year of English language learning.

There is really only one way to learn a new language, and that is to build your vocabulary, learn the verb tenses and the mechanics of that language, and then practice, practice, practice. This workbook was designed to help you do just that.

This workbook will help you to proficiently learn and effectively master the strategies and methods needed to provide you with a solid foundation in English. All the lessons are presented in a simple and progressive format designed to help you retain the knowledge and gain confidence by applying and reinforcing the skills acquired throughout the workbook.

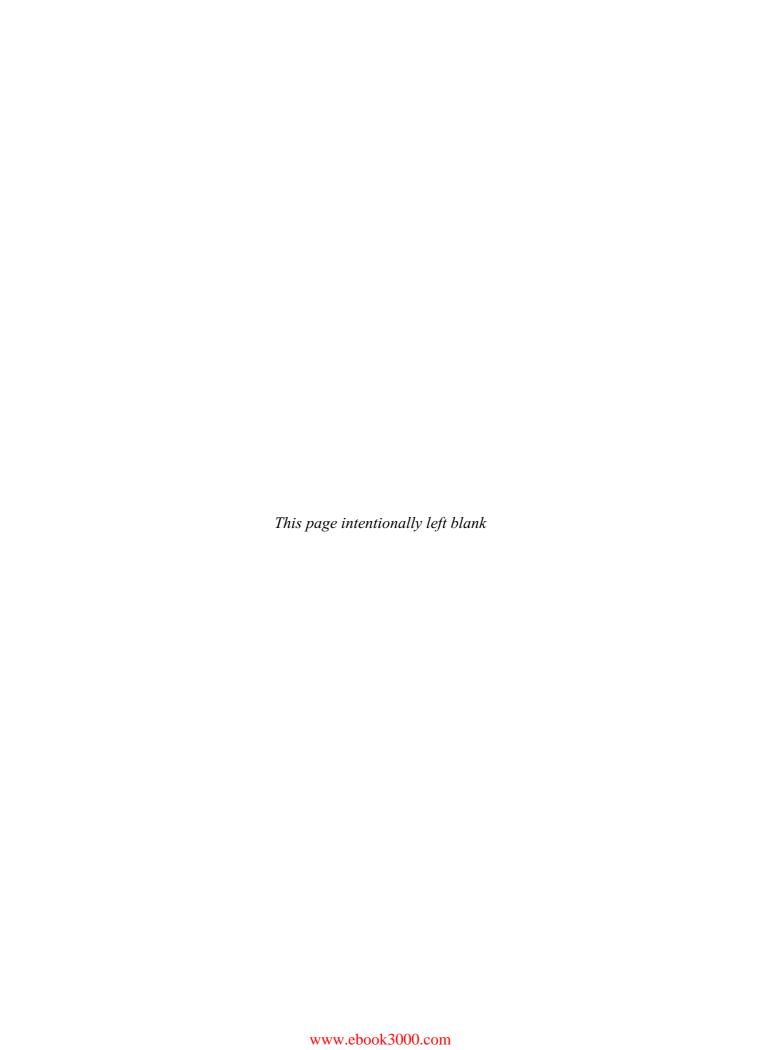
You will learn the mechanics of English through user-friendly, interactive, and well-constructed grammar exercises. These exercises are loaded with everyday basic words intended to help you quickly and efficiently enrich your vocabulary and give you a firm understanding of the lesson before moving on to the next.

Ample space is provided in each lesson for you to record your new vocabulary words in a central location to allow you to study these words regularly and refer back to them quickly when necessary. Be sure to learn these words by heart as they are basic and useful English words.

Learning a new language is an interesting and exciting journey that is enhanced when the learning material is presented in a stimulating and enjoyable manner that encourages a learner to keep moving forward.

We wish you much success and enjoyment throughout your learning process using this workbook, and we are confident that you will gain from it exactly what was intended: a solid comprehension of your first year of English language learning.

Good luck, and above all, have fun.



#### To Be: Present Tense

The verb *to be* describes a state of being. Use the following to form the present tense of the verb *to be*.

I am → I am happy today.
you are → You are smart.
he is → He is my friend.
she is → She is busy.
it is → It is true.
we are → We are tired.
they are → They are here.

EXERCISE 1.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>flashlight | <br>happy  |          | busy   |
|----------------|------------|----------|--------|
| kitchen        | <br>sick   |          | ready  |
| <br>girl       | <br>flower |          | small  |
| vacuum         | <br>tent   |          | fridge |
| <br>counter    | <br>toy    |          | floor  |
| basement       | <br>ribbon |          | hair   |
| <br>closet     | <br>dirty  |          | tired  |
| <br>today      | <br>pink   |          | twins  |
| nice           | <br>pretty |          | true   |
| <br>smart      | <br>yellow |          | friend |
| here           | microwa    | ave oven |        |

| Rewrite the following sentences to create the present tense by choosing the correct form of the verb <b>to be</b> | in |
|---|----|
| parentheses.  |    |

| 1.  | The girl (am, is, are) pretty.                             |
|-----|--|
| 2.  | I (am, is, are) ready.                                     |
| 3.  | She (am, is, are) my friend.                               |
| 4.  | They (am, is, are) twins.                                  |
| 5.  | The flowers (am, is, are) yellow.                          |
| 6.  | The flashlight (am, is, are) in the tent.                  |
| 7.  | The fridge and counter in the kitchen (am, is, are) dirty. |
|     |  |
| 8.  | I (am, is, are) tired today.                               |
| 9.  | We (am, is, are) busy.                                     |
| 10. | The toys (am, is, are) in the basement.                    |
| 11. | The ribbons in my hair (am, is, are) pink.                 |
| 12. | The kitchen (am, is, are) very small.                      |
| 13. | The vacuum (am, is, are) in the closet.                    |
| 14. | He (am, is, are) nice.                                     |
| 15. | The microwave oven (am, is, are) in the kitchen.           |
|     |  |
| 16. | The toy (am, is, are) on the floor.                        |
| 17. | I (am, is, are) sick today.                                |
|     |  |

| EXE | RCISE |  |
|-----|-------|--|
| 1   | .2    |  |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>aunt  | - | cousin  | <br>bald    |
|-----------|---|---------|-------------|
| <br>cloud |   | uncle   | <br>student |
| red       |   | bright  | <br>open    |
| window    |   | blue    | <br>juice   |
| <br>cold  |   | brother | <br>sad     |
| teacher   |   | class   | <br>lawyer  |
| <br>man   |   | tall    | <br>room    |

|      | news                                       | hot                                    | grass |
|------|--|--|-------|
|      | furniture                                  | upstairs                               | old   |
|      | moon                                       | green                                  | lazy  |
|      | bug  | woman                                  |       |
| Comp | plete the following sentences using the co | orrect form of the verb <b>to be</b> . |       |
| 1.   | My aunt nice.                              |  |       |
| 2.   | The clouds white.                          |  |       |
| 3.   | Kathy sick.                                |  |       |
| 4.   | The ribbons yellow.                        |  |       |
| 5.   | We twins.                                  |  |       |
| 6.   | The windows open.                          |  |       |
| 7.   | Colton and Cody brothers.                  |  |       |
| 8.   | We teachers.                               |  |       |
| 9.   | It a French book.                          |  |       |
| 10.  | You very smart.                            |  |       |
| 11.  | It sad news.                               |  |       |
| 12.  | She my cousin.                             |  |       |
| 13.  | You tired.                                 |  |       |
| 14.  | The grass green.                           |  |       |
| 15.  | It in my room.                             |  |       |
| 16.  | They lazy.                                 |  |       |
| 17.  | The flower yellow.                         |  |       |
| 18.  | The bug on the counter.                    |  |       |
| 19.  | I tall.                                    |  |       |
| 20.  | The man happy.                             |  |       |
| 21.  | The vacuum red.                            |  |       |
| 22.  | The tent blue.                             |  |       |
| 23.  | The juice cold.                            |  |       |
| 24.  | She a student.                             |  |       |
| 25.  | They in my class.                          |  |       |
| 26.  | The woman a lawyer.                        |  |       |
| 27.  | She upstairs.                              |  |       |

28. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ smart.

| 29. | The ribbon blue.           |
|-----|----------------------------|
| 30. | The water hot.             |
| 31. | My uncle bald.             |
| 32. | The furniture old.         |
| 33. | The fridge in the kitchen. |
| 34. | The moon bright.           |

## To Be: Present Tense: Negative Form



Place *not* after the verb *to be* to create the negative form of the present tense.

| I am     | $\rightarrow$ | I am not     | $\rightarrow$ | I am not ready.      |
|----------|---------------|--------------|---------------|----------------------|
| you are  | $\rightarrow$ | you are not  | $\rightarrow$ | You are not busy.    |
| he is    | $\rightarrow$ | he is not    | $\rightarrow$ | He is not my friend. |
| she is   | $\rightarrow$ | she is not   | $\rightarrow$ | She is not tall.     |
| it is    | $\rightarrow$ | it is not    | $\rightarrow$ | It is not true.      |
| we are   | $\rightarrow$ | we are not   | $\rightarrow$ | We are not tired.    |
| they are | $\rightarrow$ | they are not | $\rightarrow$ | They are not pink.   |

The negative form of the present tense of the verb *to be* can also be expressed with the contraction *isn't* or *aren't*. There is no contraction for *am not*.

| I am not     | $\rightarrow$ | I am not    | $\rightarrow$ | I am not sick.      |
|--------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|---------------------|
| you are not  | $\rightarrow$ | you aren't  | $\rightarrow$ | You aren't a teache |
| he is not    | $\rightarrow$ | he isn't    | $\rightarrow$ | He isn't a lawyer.  |
| she is not   | $\rightarrow$ | she isn't   | $\rightarrow$ | She isn't ready.    |
| it is not    | $\rightarrow$ | it isn't    | $\rightarrow$ | It isn't a toy.     |
| we are not   | $\rightarrow$ | we aren't   | $\rightarrow$ | We aren't twins.    |
| they are not | $\rightarrow$ | they aren't | $\rightarrow$ | They aren't yellow. |

2.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| table             | sour     | <br>early    |
|-------------------|----------|--------------|
| <br>city          | lime     | <br>Spanish  |
| <br>kid           | neighbor | <br>drawer   |
| <br>sister        | cheese   | <br>empty    |
| _ bus             | Italian  | <br>pregnant |
| <br>sister-in-law |          |              |

|     | ite the following sentences to express the negative form. Write the sentence once using <b>am not, is not e not</b> and once using the contraction <b>isn't</b> or <b>aren't</b> . |
|-----|--|
| 1.  | The cheese is on the table.  |
| 2.  | She is my sister.  |
| 3.  | My neighbors are Spanish   |
| 4.  | My sister-in-law is Italian.   |
| 5.  | Diane is pregnant.   |
| 6.  | The limes are sour.  |
| 7.  | The bus is empty.  |
| 8.  | The kids are early for class today.  |
| 9.  | The drawers are empty  |
| 10. | It is a nice city.   |
|     |  |
|     | XERCISE 2.2  |
|     | Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.             |
|     | hoss wife key  |

| exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided. |  |                   |  |             |  |
|--|--|-------------------|--|-------------|--|
| boss   |  | wife              |  | key         |  |
| mall   |  | boy               |  | office      |  |
| far  |  | dragonfly         |  | work        |  |
| subway   |  | <sub>-</sub> full |  | garbage can |  |
| road   |  | white             |  | garbage bag |  |
| eraser   |  | bowl              |  | shelf       |  |

|       | fair                                     | black                         | book             |
|-------|--|-------------------------------|------------------|
|       | wide                                     | hand                          | pencil case      |
|       | husband                                  | pen                           | school           |
|       | good                                     | expensive                     | shoe             |
|       | idea                                     | late                          | ceiling          |
|       | store                                    | car                           | doctor           |
| Use a | m not or the contraction isn't or aren't | to complete the following neg | ative sentences. |
| 1.    | The subway full.                         |                               |                  |
| 2.    | The windows dirty.                       |                               |                  |
| 3.    | It a dragonfly.                          |                               |                  |
| 4.    | The keys in the car.                     |                               |                  |
| 5.    | The microwave oven in the                | kitchen.                      |                  |
| 6.    | My boss at the office.                   |                               |                  |
| 7.    | The boys in the tent.                    |                               |                  |
| 8.    | We busy at work.                         |                               |                  |
| 9.    | My hands dirty.                          |                               |                  |
| 10.   | The eraser in the pencil case            | e.                            |                  |
| 11.   | She a teacher in my school.              |                               |                  |
| 12.   | The ceiling white.                       |                               |                  |
| 13.   | The bowls on the table.                  |                               |                  |
| 14.   | The garbage bags in the dra              | awer.                         |                  |
| 15.   | The garbage can full.                    |                               |                  |
| 16.   | The store far.                           |                               |                  |
| 17.   | It fair.                                 |                               |                  |
| 18.   | The roads in the city wide.              |                               |                  |
| 19.   | My husband a doctor.                     |                               |                  |
| 20.   | The pens black.                          |                               |                  |
| 21.   | The books on the shelf.                  |                               |                  |
| 22.   | The vacuum in the basemen                | nt.                           |                  |
| 23.   | They friends.                            |                               |                  |
| 24.   | The ribbon red.                          |                               |                  |
| 25.   | She late for class today.                |                               |                  |

26. It \_\_\_\_\_ true.

| 27. | I tired.                 |
|-----|--------------------------|
| 28. | Barry a good student.    |
| 29. | The juice cold.          |
| 30. | My wife at the mall.     |
| 31. | The shoes expensive.     |
| 32. | The students tired today |
| 33. | The woman old.           |
| 34. | It a good idea.          |

#### To Be: Present Tense: Question Form



Place the verb *to be* before the subject to create the question form of the present tense.

 $\rightarrow$  Am I late? Iam am I → are you → Are you my new boss? you are → Is he your teacher? he is  $\rightarrow$  is he she is → is she → Is she your neighbor?  $\rightarrow$  is it → Is it expensive? it is  $\rightarrow$  are we  $\rightarrow$  Are we early? we are they are  $\rightarrow$  are they  $\rightarrow$  Are they in the basement?

EXERCISE 3.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

\_\_\_\_\_ garage \_\_\_\_ wheel \_\_\_\_\_ French \_\_\_\_\_ policeman \_\_\_\_\_ goldfish \_\_\_\_\_ brown \_\_\_\_\_ sweet \_\_\_\_\_ downstairs \_\_\_\_\_ box \_\_\_\_\_ meeting \_\_\_\_\_ pond \_\_\_\_\_ calf \_\_\_\_\_ bathroom \_\_\_\_\_ serious \_\_\_\_\_English \_\_\_\_\_ outside \_\_\_\_\_ poor \_\_\_\_\_ toothbrush \_\_\_\_\_ orange \_\_\_\_\_ sharpener \_\_\_\_\_ toothpaste \_\_\_\_ clothesline \_\_\_\_\_ bathing suit

Rewrite the following sentences to create questions by placing the verb **to be** before the subject. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer.

- 1. The wheels are in the garage. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. The sharpener is on my desk. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. The woman is very poor.

| 4.  | The toothbrush and toothpaste are in the bathroom.                        |            |  |           |  |  |
|-----|---|------------|--|-----------|--|--|
|     |   |            |  |           |  |  |
| 5.  | My bathing suit is on the clothesline                                     |            |  |           |  |  |
| 6.  | I am in your English class.   |            |  |           |  |  |
| 7.  | It is cold outside.   |            |  |           |  |  |
| 8.  | He is a policeman in the city.  |            |  |           |  |  |
| 9.  | The coats are on the floor.   |            |  |           |  |  |
| 10. | Johanne and Véronique are in a meeting                                    | J          |  |           |  |  |
| 11. | The toys are in the box downstairs.                                       |            |  |           |  |  |
| 12. | The cow and calf are brown.   |            |  |           |  |  |
| 13. | The orange juice is sweet.  |            |  |           |  |  |
| 14. | The frogs are in the pond.  |            |  |           |  |  |
| 15. | The goldfish is in the bowl.  |            |  |           |  |  |
| 16. | You are serious.  |            |  |           |  |  |
| 17. | Marie is French.  |            |  |           |  |  |
|     |   |            |  |           |  |  |
|     | •   |            |  |           |  |  |
|     | GERCISE 3.2   |            |  |           |  |  |
|     | Use your dictionary to find the mean exercise before you begin. Write the |            |  |           |  |  |
|     | knife   | gate       |  | pot       |  |  |
|     | dishwasher  | printer    |  | sheet     |  |  |
|     | fork nail polish turkey   |            |  |           |  |  |
|     | bill bird Chinese   |            |  |           |  |  |
|     | correct skunk Mr.   |            |  |           |  |  |
|     | living room   | pillow     |  | Scottish  |  |  |
|     | clean   | accountant |  | needle    |  |  |
|     | real  | ink        |  | birdhouse |  |  |
|     | sharp fence pan   |            |  |           |  |  |

\_\_\_\_\_ lipstick

\_\_\_\_\_ oven

\_\_\_\_\_ funny

\_\_\_\_\_ pearl

\_\_\_\_\_ bed

\_\_\_\_\_ thread

\_\_\_\_\_ pen

\_\_\_\_\_ Mrs.

\_\_\_\_\_ curtain

\_\_\_\_\_ pig

\_\_\_\_\_ garden

\_\_\_\_\_ again

\_\_\_\_\_ there

| Comp | plete the following questions using the correct form of the verb <b>to be</b> . |
|------|---|
| 1.   | it cold in Canada?  |
| 2.   | the skunks in my garden again?  |
| 3.   | the needle and thread in the drawer?  |
| 4.   | he a good accountant?   |
| 5.   | they in the living room?  |
| 6.   | the ink in the printer?   |
| 7.   | the pots and pans clean?  |
| 8.   | she your sister-in-law?   |
| 9.   | the forks in the dishwasher?  |
| 10.  | we ready?   |
| 11.  | it a black pen?   |
| 12.  | I nice?   |
| 13.  | you busy today?   |
| 14.  | the gate open?  |
| 15.  | the fridge empty?   |
| 16.  | Mr. and Mrs. Yee Chinese?   |
| 17.  | the pillows on the bed?   |
| 18.  | the fence white?  |
| 19.  | the books on the shelf?   |
| 20.  | the sheets on the clothesline?  |
| 21.  | the curtains blue?  |
| 22.  | the nail polish purple?   |
| 23.  | the pearls real?  |
| 24.  | Mrs. McMahon Scottish?  |
| 25.  | the turkey in the oven?   |
| 26.  | the birds in the birdhouse?   |
| 27.  | the pigs in the pen?  |
| 28.  | the knife sharp?  |
| 29.  | the bill correct?   |
| 30.  | the lipstick red or pink?   |
| 31.  | they there?   |
| 32.  | I funny?  |



#### To Be: Past Tense

The past tense of the verb *to be* is created by using *was* or *were* in place of *am*, *is*, and *are*.

I am → I was → I was tired at school today.

you are → you were → You were downstairs.

he is → he was → He was funny.

she is → she was → She was at work.

it is → it was → It was on the shelf.

we are → we were → We were upstairs.

they are → they were → They were here.

EXERCISE 4.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

\_\_\_ snake \_\_\_\_\_ bucket \_\_\_\_\_ diaper \_\_\_\_\_ pocket \_\_\_\_\_ thick \_\_\_\_\_ sorry \_\_\_\_\_ farm \_\_\_\_\_ pool \_\_\_\_\_ minnow \_\_\_\_\_ beach \_\_\_\_\_ washer \_\_\_\_\_ dryer \_\_\_\_\_ pencil \_\_\_\_\_ crust \_\_\_\_\_ grandmother \_\_\_\_\_\_ roommate \_\_\_\_\_\_ hairdresser \_\_\_\_\_ laundry room

Rewrite the following sentences to create the past tense by changing the present tense form of the verb **to be** to the past tense form.

- 1. Joanie and Isabelle are at the beach.
- 2. He is my roommate. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. It is in my pocket. \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 4. The snake is in the garden. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. The diapers are in the bag. \_\_\_\_\_

| 6.  | She is a hairdresser.                |   |           |  |  |  |
|-----|--------------------------------------|---|-----------|--|--|--|
| 7.  | Lisa is sick.                        |   |           |  |  |  |
| 8.  | The kids are in the pool.            |   |           |  |  |  |
| 9.  | The bucket is full of minnows.       |   |           |  |  |  |
| 10. | The washer and dryer are in the laun | dry room.   |           |  |  |  |
| 11. | I am in my office.                   | •   |           |  |  |  |
| 12. | The pencil is on the floor.          |   |           |  |  |  |
| 13. | Sorry that I am late.                |   |           |  |  |  |
|     | The flowers are for Jennifer.        |   |           |  |  |  |
| 15. | My grandmother is in the hospital    |   |           |  |  |  |
| 16. | The exam is easy.                    |   |           |  |  |  |
| 17. | The crust is very thick.             |   |           |  |  |  |
| 18. | The farm is very far.                |   |           |  |  |  |
|     | Use your dictionary to find the n    | neaning of the new vocabulary words<br>the words in your language in the sp |           |  |  |  |
|     | huge                                 | cupboard  | downtown  |  |  |  |
|     | ring                                 | asleep  | broken    |  |  |  |
|     | crib                                 | skating rink  | godmother |  |  |  |
|     | story slipper yesterday              |   |           |  |  |  |
|     | fresh wedding candle                 |   |           |  |  |  |
|     | soft egg nurse                       |   |           |  |  |  |
|     | spicy shower bedroom                 |   |           |  |  |  |
|     | baby awake last night                |   |           |  |  |  |
|     | with vase couch                      |   |           |  |  |  |
|     | wine                                 | locker  | both      |  |  |  |
|     | cellar                               | soup  | library   |  |  |  |

\_\_\_\_\_ whale \_\_\_\_\_ cafeteria

Complete the following past tense sentences using was or were.

1. The baby \_\_\_\_\_ in the crib.

\_\_\_\_\_ rake

2. The candles \_\_\_\_\_ on the table.

| 3.  | It a good story.                  |
|-----|-----------------------------------|
| 4.  | They awake.                       |
| 5.  | My godmother asleep on the couch. |
| 6.  | The wine in the cellar.           |
| 7.  | I ready.                          |
| 8.  | He in the shower.                 |
| 9.  | The bowls in the cupboard.        |
| 10. | The girls at the skating rink.    |
| 11. | The moon bright last night.       |
| 12. | The juice fresh.                  |
| 13. | The eggs on the counter.          |
| 14. | My sister outside.                |
| 15. | The keys in the car.              |
| 16. | The ring expensive.               |
| 17. | You at the wedding.               |
| 18. | The soup hot and spicy.           |
| 19. | Both pillows soft.                |
| 20. | Annie a nurse.                    |
| 21. | The flowers in the vase.          |
| 22. | The rake in the garage.           |
| 23. | My slippers in the bedroom.       |
| 24. | The whale huge.                   |
| 25. | We downtown yesterday.            |
| 26. | Chris in the cafeteria with Cory. |
| 27. | It in my locker.                  |
| 28. | We at the library.                |
| 29. | The pool small.                   |
| 30. | The printer broken.               |
| 31. | My pockets full.                  |
| 32. | The teachers in the office.       |

## To Be: Past Tense: Negative Form



Place *not* after the past tense form of the verb *to be* to create a negative sentence.

| I was     | $\rightarrow$ | I was not     | $\rightarrow$ | I was not sick yesterday.  |
|-----------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| you were  | $\rightarrow$ | you were not  | $\rightarrow$ | You were not at the beach. |
| he was    | $\rightarrow$ | he was not    | $\rightarrow$ | He was not at the meeting. |
| she was   | $\rightarrow$ | she was not   | $\rightarrow$ | She was not very nice.     |
| it was    | $\rightarrow$ | it was not    | $\rightarrow$ | It was not on my desk.     |
| we were   | $\rightarrow$ | we were not   | $\rightarrow$ | We were not late.          |
| they were | $\rightarrow$ | they were not | $\rightarrow$ | They were not ready.       |

The negative form of the past tense of the verb *to be* can also be expressed with the contraction *wasn't* or *weren't*.

| I was not     | $\rightarrow$ | I wasn't     | $\rightarrow$ | I wasn't tired last night.   |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| you were not  | $\rightarrow$ | you weren't  | $\rightarrow$ | You weren't at work today.   |
| he was not    | $\rightarrow$ | he wasn't    | $\rightarrow$ | He wasn't serious.           |
| she was not   | $\rightarrow$ | she wasn't   | $\rightarrow$ | She wasn't here yesterday.   |
| it was not    | $\rightarrow$ | it wasn't    | $\rightarrow$ | It wasn't true.              |
| we were not   | $\rightarrow$ | we weren't   | $\rightarrow$ | We weren't at the library.   |
| they were not | $\rightarrow$ | they weren't | $\rightarrow$ | They weren't busy last night |

EXERCISE 5.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>dress   | <br>waitress | <br>joke    |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| <br>purple  | <br>fast     | <br>plate   |
| <br>tree    | <br>list     | <br>play (n |
| <br>raccoon | <br>year     | <br>name    |

Rewrite the following sentences to express the negative form. Write the sentence once using was not or were not and once using the contraction wasn't or weren't.

| 1. | The dress was blue. |  |
|----|---------------------|--|
|    |                     |  |
|    |                     |  |

| 2. The cou  | ch in the living room v        | vas dirtv                       |  |  |  |  |
|-------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
|             |                                |                                 |  |  |  |  |
| 3. They we  | They were very fast            |                                 |  |  |  |  |
| 4. It was a | good joke                      |                                 |  |  |  |  |
|             |                                |                                 |  |  |  |  |
| . The race  | The raccoons were in the tree. |                                 |  |  |  |  |
| . The slip  | pers were purple               |                                 |  |  |  |  |
|             |                                |                                 |  |  |  |  |
| . We were   | e at the play last night.      |                                 |  |  |  |  |
| The plat    | tes were in the dishwas        | sher.                           |  |  |  |  |
|             |                                |                                 |  |  |  |  |
| Karen w     | as a waitress for three        | years                           |  |  |  |  |
|             |                                |                                 |  |  |  |  |
| . My nam    | e was on the list              |                                 |  |  |  |  |
|             |                                |                                 |  |  |  |  |
|             |                                |                                 |  |  |  |  |
|             |                                |                                 |  |  |  |  |
| EXERCISE    |                                |                                 |  |  |  |  |
| 5.2         |                                | ed the meaning of the moure     |  |  |  |  |
|             |                                | n. Write the words in your lang | cabulary words needed for this uage in the space provided. |  |  |  |
|             | phone                          | stove                           | movie  |  |  |  |
|             | quiet                          | cat                             | powder   |  |  |  |
|             | mark                           | ugly                            | stain  |  |  |  |
|             | clever                         | slide                           | funeral  |  |  |  |
|             | landlord                       | horn                            | Greek  |  |  |  |
|             | butter                         | sock                            | polite   |  |  |  |
|             | deep                           | long                            | vegetable  |  |  |  |
|             | loud                           | big                             | snowstorm  |  |  |  |
|             | jam                            | lake                            | light  |  |  |  |

|        | off                                    | toolbox                    | hammer          |
|--------|--|----------------------------|-----------------|
|        | binder                                 | ground                     | bread           |
|        | shaver                                 | stroller                   | museum          |
|        | nest                                   | rat                        | on              |
|        | right answer                           |                            |                 |
| Use ti | ne contraction wasn't or weren't to co | emplete the following nega | tive sentences. |
| 1.     | My marks good at school                | last year.                 |                 |
| 2.     | It a raccoon; it was a skur            | ık.                        |                 |
| 3.     | The stain on the floor big             |                            |                 |
| 4.     | The vegetables fresh.                  |                            |                 |
| 5.     | You very polite with the l             | andlord.                   |                 |
| 6.     | It the right answer.                   |                            |                 |
| 7.     | The horn in my car loud.               |                            |                 |
| 8.     | We at the funeral.                     |                            |                 |
| 9.     | The kids quiet today in cl             | ass.                       |                 |
| 10.    | The grass long.                        |                            |                 |
| 11.    | She very clever.                       |                            |                 |
| 12.    | The lake deep.                         |                            |                 |
| 13.    | The baby in the stroller.              |                            |                 |
| 14.    | He on the slide.                       |                            |                 |
| 15.    | My socks on the clothesli              | ne.                        |                 |
| 16.    | The shaver in the bathroo              | om.                        |                 |
| 17.    | The bread and butter on                | the counter.               |                 |
| 18.    | The museum very big.                   |                            |                 |
| 19.    | The rats in the cellar.                |                            |                 |
| 20.    | The nest on the ground.                |                            |                 |
| 21.    | I on the phone.                        |                            |                 |
| 22.    | It a big snowstorm.                    |                            |                 |
| 23.    | The binders in my locker.              |                            |                 |
| 24.    | The man Greek; he was It               | alian.                     |                 |
| 25.    | The jam in the fridge.                 |                            |                 |
| 26.    | It a good movie.                       |                            |                 |

| 27. | The lights | on |
|-----|------------|----|
|-----|------------|----|

- 28. The stove \_\_\_\_\_ off.
- 29. It \_\_\_\_\_ ugly.
- 30. The cat \_\_\_\_\_ black.
- 31. The hammer \_\_\_\_\_ in the toolbox.
- 32. The powder \_\_\_\_\_ on the shelf.

## To Be: Past Tense: Question Form



Place *was* or *were* before the subject to form questions in the past tense of the verb *to be*.

| I was     | $\rightarrow$ | was I     | $\rightarrow$ | Was I funny?         |
|-----------|---------------|-----------|---------------|----------------------|
| you were  | $\rightarrow$ | were you  | $\rightarrow$ | Were you awake?      |
| he was    | $\rightarrow$ | was he    | $\rightarrow$ | Was he very tall?    |
| she was   | $\rightarrow$ | was she   | $\rightarrow$ | Was she downtown?    |
| it was    | $\rightarrow$ | was it    | $\rightarrow$ | Was it on the floor? |
| we were   | $\rightarrow$ | were we   | $\rightarrow$ | Were we fast?        |
| they were | $\rightarrow$ | were they | $\rightarrow$ | Were they asleep?    |
|           |               |           |               |                      |

| EXERCISI |
|----------|
| 6.1      |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| recipe | crutches         | tablecloth |
|--------|------------------|------------|
| ship   | ashtray          | bitter     |
| free   |                  | seasick    |
| angry  | easy             | behind     |
| low    | velvet           | together   |
| door   | enough           | airplane   |
| lady   | nail clippers    |            |
| thin   | kindergarten     |            |
| young  | flight attendant |            |

Rewrite the following sentences to create questions in the past tense by placing **was** or **were** before the subject. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer.

- 1. It was free.
- 2. The airplane was very low in the sky. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. The mall was empty.

| 4.  | They were in kindergarten togetl   | ner  |              |  |
|-----|------------------------------------|--|--------------|--|
| 5.  | It was bitter.                     |  |              |  |
| 6.  | You were angry at Susan.           |  |              |  |
| 7.  | The recipe was easy.               |  |              |  |
| 8.  | The nail clippers were in the draw | ver  |              |  |
| 9.  | The curtains were velvet.          |  |              |  |
| 10. | The tablecloth was dirty.          |  |              |  |
| 11. | It was enough.                     |  |              |  |
| 12. | She was a flight attendant when    | she was young  |              |  |
|     |                                    |  |              |  |
| 13. | The ashtrays were full             |  |              |  |
| 14. | The lady was thin.                 |  |              |  |
| 15. | Claude was seasick on the ship.    |  |              |  |
| 16. | The crutches were behind the do    | oor  |              |  |
|     |                                    |  |              |  |
|     |                                    |  |              |  |
|     | KERCISE                            |  |              |  |
|     | 0.7                                |  |              |  |
|     | -                                  | the meaning of the new vocabu<br>Write the words in your languag | •            |  |
|     | plastic                            | warm   | awful        |  |
|     | •                                  | high school  |              |  |
|     |                                    | deodorant  |              |  |
|     |                                    |  | instructions |  |
|     | cashier                            |  | new          |  |
|     |                                    |  | report card  |  |
|     |                                    |  | open         |  |
|     |                                    | 5  | pumpkin      |  |
|     | marker                             |  | fruit        |  |
|     |                                    | •  | high chair   |  |
|     |                                    |  | president    |  |
|     | iron                               | •  | ·            |  |
|     | teddy bear                         |  |              |  |
|     | grocery store                      |  |              |  |

Complete the following sentences using **was** or **were** to form questions in the past tense.

| 1.  | the weather awful?                   |
|-----|--------------------------------------|
| 2.  | the snowflakes big?                  |
| 3.  | he at school every day?              |
| 4.  | you a cashier at the grocery store?  |
| 5.  | the movie boring?                    |
| 6.  | the vegetables fresh?                |
| 7.  | your report card good?               |
| 8.  | the jars on the shelf?               |
| 9.  | the laptop computer new?             |
| 10. | the teddy bear in the crib?          |
| 11. | the fruit in the bowl ripe?          |
| 12. | the baby in the high chair?          |
| 13. | you in my class in high school?      |
| 14. | the hardware store open?             |
| 15. | the ribs good?                       |
| 16. | the swan white?                      |
| 17. | the blankets warm?                   |
| 18. | Sandra on the phone?                 |
| 19. | they at the museum?                  |
| 20. | the pumpkins rotten?                 |
| 21. | the brush in the bathroom?           |
| 22. | the house on fire?                   |
| 23. | the results good?                    |
| 24. | the driveway full of snow?           |
| 25. | the iron hot?                        |
| 26. | he the president?                    |
| 27. | the water cold?                      |
| 28. | the deodorant in the bathroom?       |
| 29. | Linda a teller at the bank?          |
| 30. | the parking lot full?                |
| 31. | the instructions in the plastic bag? |
| 32. | the marker yellow?                   |
|     |                                      |



### Exceptional Uses with the Verb To Be

| The following a | are common | evnressions | that i | ise the | verh 1 | to l | ho  |
|-----------------|------------|-------------|--------|---------|--------|------|-----|
| THE IOHOWING a  |            | expressions | unai i | ase me  | veru i | w    | JE. |

| to be cold  | to be hungry  | to be twenty-five years old |
|-------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| to be hot   | to be thirsty | to be scared/afraid         |
| to be right | to be wrong   | to be ashamed               |

EXERCISE 7.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>because      | daughter     | race |
|------------------|--------------|------|
| <br>snowball     | birthday     | son  |
| <br>mother       | breakfast    | size |
| <br>behavior     | thunder      | gues |
| <br>spider       | please       | last |
| <br>lightning    | father       | dark |
| <br>all the time | this morning |      |

Rewrite the following sentences using the correct form of the verb **to be**. Use the information in parentheses at the end of each sentence to help you determine the correct tense and to know whether the sentence is affirmative or negative.

- 1. My daughter (to be) afraid of the dark. (present tense, affirmative)
- 2. (To be) Jason right? (present tense, affirmative)
- 3. She (to be) hungry for breakfast this morning. (past tense, negative)

| •• | Please open the windows. I (to be) very hot. (present tense, affirmative)            |
|----|--|
|    | I (to be) ashamed of the size of my shoes. (present tense, negative)                 |
|    | Cathy (to be) thirty-three years old on her last birthday. (past tense, affirmative) |
| •  | We (to be) very thirsty after the race. (past tense, affirmative)                    |
|    | You (to be) wrong again. (present tense, affirmative)                                |
|    | I (to be) right all the time. (present tense, negative)                              |
|    | (To be) you scared of thunder? (present tense, affirmative)                          |
|    | He (to be) afraid of the lightning. (past tense, negative)                           |
|    | I (to be) cold this morning. (past tense, affirmative)                               |
|    | (To be) the guests hungry? (present tense, affirmative)                              |
|    | My mother and father (to be) ashamed of my behavior. (past tense, affirmative)       |
|    | (To be) your son scared of spiders? (present tense, affirmative)                     |
|    | I (to be) eighteen years old. (present tense, negative)                              |
|    | Bill is happy because he (to be) right. (present tense, affirmative)                 |
|    | I (to be) cold because of the snowballs in my pocket. (present tense, affirmative)   |

EXERCISE 7.2

> Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

|     | needle                                       | shark                             | summer          |
|-----|--|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
|     | never  | jellyfish                         | usually         |
|     | crow   | frequently                        |                 |
| om  | aplete the following sentences using the cor | rect form of the verb <b>to l</b> | be.             |
| 1.  | . He ashamed of you. (past te                | nse, negative)                    |                 |
| 2.  | they cold at the beach? (pas                 | t tense, affirmative)             |                 |
| 3.  | . She right. (present tense, ne              | gative)                           |                 |
| 4.  | . We wrong. (past tense, affirn              | native)                           |                 |
| 5.  | . Sharon twenty-two years old                | d today. (present tense           | e, affirmative) |
| 6.  | . It hot last summer. (past ten              | se, affirmative)                  |                 |
| 7.  | . Mark afraid of needles. (pres              | ent tense, negative)              |                 |
| 8.  | . I hungry all the time. (preser             | nt tense, affirmative)            |                 |
| 9.  | . The baby thirsty. (present te              | nse, negative)                    |                 |
| 10. | . He wrong. (present tense, af               | firmative)                        |                 |
| 11. | she right? (past tense, affirm               | ative)                            |                 |
| 12. | . It cold in Canada in the wint              | er. (present tense, affi          | rmative)        |
| 13. | you scared of sharks? (prese                 | nt tense, affirmative)            |                 |
| 14. | it hot in your class yesterday               | ? (past tense, affirmat           | ive)            |
| 15. | it cold outside? (past tense, a              | affirmative)                      |                 |
| 16. | . They wrong. (past tense, neg               | gative)                           |                 |
| 17. | . She ashamed of her son. (pro               | esent tense, negative)            |                 |
| 18. | you cold? (past tense, affirm                | ative)                            |                 |
| 19. | . I twenty-two years old. (past              | tense, negative)                  |                 |
| 20. | . They ashamed of her. (prese                | nt tense, negative)               |                 |
| 21. | . Marcel right. (present tense,              | affirmative)                      |                 |
| 22. | Ben thirsty? (past tense, affir              | mative)                           |                 |
| 23. | . The boys hungry. (present te               | ense, negative)                   |                 |
| 24. | . I scared of jellyfish. (present            | tense, affirmative)               |                 |
| 25. | . The girls thirsty. (present ten            | se, affirmative)                  |                 |
| 26. | they ashamed of me? (past t                  | ense, affirmative)                |                 |

| 27. | It afraid of you. (past tense, negative)           |
|-----|--|
| 28. | Lucy usually right. (present tense, affirmative)   |
| 29. | He scared of crows. (present tense, negative)      |
| 30. | It cold downstairs. (past tense, affirmative)      |
| 31. | She frequently wrong. (present tense, affirmative) |
| 32. | Peter hungry? (present tense, affirmative)         |
| 33. | I afraid of the frog. (past tense, negative)       |
| 34. | We very hungry. (present tense, affirmative)       |

## Adjectives

| Adjecti        | ves are used to de                          | scribe nouns. They                        | are placed before   | the noun.                                    |
|----------------|---|---|---|--|
|                | a <i>little</i> dog<br>a <i>pink</i> flower | a <i>clean</i> house<br>a <i>busy</i> man | a <i>nice</i> neighbor<br>a <i>good</i> recipe                        | a <b>good</b> friend<br>a <b>blue</b> bucket |
| Ad             | djectives never tak                         | te -s even if the no                      | un is plural.   |  |
|                | <i>brown</i> cows <i>young</i> girls        | <pre>big snowflakes pretty ribbons</pre>  | expensive cars dirty shoes  | <i>clean</i> floors <i>soft</i> pillows      |
|                | KERCISE                                     |   |   |  |
|                | vocabulary                                  |   | neaning of the followin<br>is exercise before you b<br>oace provided. |  |
|                | hard  |   | to drink  | to see                                       |
|                | little                                      |   | to want   | to look                                      |
|                | test  |   | leather   | windy  |
|                | cute  |   | hairy   | beautiful                                    |
|                | prune                                       |   | for sale  | country                                      |
|                | hands                                       | some                                      |   |  |
| Rewri<br>sente |   | ences, and include the                    | adjective(s) in the corr  | ect place in each                            |
| 1.             | The house is for sa                         | ale. (cute, little)                       |   |  |
| 2.             | It is a knife. (very,                       | sharp)                                    |   |  |
| 3.             | He is a man. (tall,                         | handsome)                                 |   |  |
| 4.             | It was a day yeste                          | rday. (cold, windy)                       |   |  |
| 5.             | I want a jacket. (b                         | lack, leather)                            |   |  |
| 6.             | They drink juice e                          | very morning. (pru                        | ne)   |  |

7. The bug is in my shoe. (big, green)

8. Elizabeth is a teacher. (French)

| 9. The spider is in       | he kitchen. (ugly, hairy                 | ')   |              |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------|--|--|--------------|--|--|--|--|
| 10. Canada is a cou       | Canada is a country. (big, beautiful)    |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 11. The test was ha       | . The test was hard. (English)           |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 12. He was a police       | 2. He was a policeman. (nice)            |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 13. Look at the snow      | 13. Look at the snow. (beautiful, white) |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 14. The frog is in the    | e pond. (little, green) _                |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 15. It was a whale. (     | huge)                                    |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| -                         |  |  |              |  |  |  |  |
|                           |  |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| EXERCISE                  |  |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 8.2                       |  |  | -            |  |  |  |  |
| needed t                  | or this exercise before you              | aning of the following verbs and begin. Write the words in your la |              |  |  |  |  |
| provided                  |  |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| to n                      | nake                                     | _ to wear  | _ to love    |  |  |  |  |
| to h                      | ate                                      | to need  | _ to draw    |  |  |  |  |
| to li                     | ke                                       | _ to watch   |              |  |  |  |  |
| pie                       |  | _ right  | _ rhubarb    |  |  |  |  |
| silve                     | r  | _ cake   | _ Mexican    |  |  |  |  |
| star                      |  | BBQ  | _ picture    |  |  |  |  |
| wat                       | ch                                       | knee   | _ identical  |  |  |  |  |
| junk                      |  | wealthy  | _ strawberry |  |  |  |  |
| sore                      |  | dessert  | _ yogurt     |  |  |  |  |
| food                      | l  | swollen  | _ round      |  |  |  |  |
| ball                      | oon                                      | _ left   | _ chocolate  |  |  |  |  |
| Rewrite the following ser | tences and include the ad                | ljective(s) in the correct place in t                              | he sentence. |  |  |  |  |
| 1. It was a winter.       | long, hard)                              |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 2. I need a watch.        | new, silver)                             |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 3. My hand is sore        | (right)                                  |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 4. I want the ballo       | ons. (round)                             |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 5. We like to watch       | movies. (old)                            |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 6. Look at the stars      | in the sky. (bright)                     |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 7. I like chips. (BBC     | )  |  |              |  |  |  |  |
| 8. They want cake         | for dessert. (chocolate)                 |  |              |  |  |  |  |

| 9.  | I love food. (Mexican)           |
|-----|----------------------------------|
| 10. | He is a lawyer. (wealthy)        |
| 11. | You draw pictures. (funny)       |
| 12. | It was a meeting. (long, boring) |
| 13. | My knee is swollen. (left)       |
| 14. | The kids like food. (junk)       |
| 15. | We like to make pies. (rhubarb)  |
| 16. | I hate yogurt. (strawberry)      |
| 17. | We wear shoes to school. (white) |
| 18. | They are twins. (identical)      |

### To Have: Present Tense

Use the following to express the present tense of the verb *to have*.

- I have  $\rightarrow$  I have a red sharpener.
- you have → You have a beautiful living room.
- he has  $\rightarrow$  He has a nice wife.
- she has  $\rightarrow$  She has a blue toothbrush.
- it has  $\rightarrow$  It has a small baby.
- we have  $\rightarrow$  We have a swimming pool.
- they have  $\rightarrow$  They have a new car.

exercise 9.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>skill      | <br>tail          | next  |
|----------------|-------------------|-------|
| <br>bad        | <br>lunch         | taste |
| roof           | weird             | paw   |
| <br>skirt      | <br>week          | smile |
| headache       | attitude          | milk  |
| <br>dandruff   | <br>terrible      | shor  |
| <br>sandwich   | <br>sleeping bag  |       |
| day off        | <br>housekeeper   |       |
| <br>eye shadow | <br>peanut butter |       |
|                |                   |       |

Rewrite the following sentences using **has** or **have** to form the present tense of the verb **to have**.

- 1. He (have, has) a bad attitude. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. The cat (have, has) white paws.
- 3. I (have, has) a peanut butter sandwich for lunch today. \_\_\_\_

| 4.  | Maria (have, has) a red velvet skirt.    |
|-----|--|
| 5.  | We (have, has) a nice landlord.          |
| 6.  | Jessica (have, has) a terrible headache. |
| 7.  | We (have, has) a good housekeeper.       |
| 8.  | She (have, has) a lot of dandruff.       |
| 9.  | Tony (have, has) very good skills.       |
| 10. | The milk (have, has) a weird taste.      |
| 11. | The house (have, has) a green roof.      |
| 12. | It (have, has) a short tail.             |
| 13. | We (have, has) a day off next week.      |
| 14. | I (have, has) a warm sleeping bag.       |
| 15. | My sister (have, has) purple eye shadow. |
| 16. | You (have, has) a nice smile.            |
|     |  |

| EXERCISE |  |
|----------|--|
| 9.2      |  |
|          |  |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>moose     | <br>duck       | <br>seat          |
|---------------|----------------|-------------------|
| <br>heartburn | <br>helmet     | <br>bedroom       |
| <br>nail      | <br>area code  | <br>cold (n)      |
| <br>education | <br>purse      | <br>rocking chair |
| <br>kitten    | <br>sunflower  | <br>skate         |
| <br>mailman   | <br>boyfriend  | <br>girlfriend    |
| <br>same      | <br>motorcycle | <br>duckling      |
| <br>banana    | <br>shorts     | <br>luggage       |
| <br>antlers   | <br>puppy      | <br>braid         |
| <br>letter    | <br>monkey     | <br>mirror        |
| <br>parakeet  | <br>kettle     | <br>clock radio   |
| <br>scary     | <br>licorice   | <br>skipping rope |

| 1.  | I heartburn.                         |
|-----|--------------------------------------|
| 2.  | He a black helmet.                   |
| 3.  | Karina long braids.                  |
| 4.  | We rats in the basement.             |
| 5.  | The monkey a banana.                 |
| 6.  | I a mirror in my purse.              |
| 7.  | Jay a fast motorcycle.               |
| 8.  | My cat two orange kittens.           |
| 9.  | My sister a boyfriend.               |
| 10. | I a clock radio in my bedroom.       |
| 11. | It leather seats.                    |
| 12. | My aunt a cold.                      |
| 13. | Naomi a skipping rope.               |
| 14. | Derek and Joe black licorice.        |
| 15. | We a white fridge.                   |
| 16. | He a bad report card this year.      |
| 17. | The moose big antlers.               |
| 18. | Billy blue shorts.                   |
| 19. | We sunflowers in the garden.         |
| 20. | I a new kettle.                      |
| 21. | The mailman a letter for you.        |
| 22. | They a new puppy.                    |
| 23. | She white skates.                    |
| 24. | You long nails.                      |
| 25. | The duck seven ducklings.            |
| 26. | We the same area code.               |
| 27. | My brother a new girlfriend.         |
| 28. | She a lot of luggage.                |
| 29. | He a good education.                 |
| 30. | I a rocking chair in my living room. |
| 31. | Nathan a scary movie.                |
| 32. | Jason a blue parakeet.               |

Complete the following sentences using **has** or **have** to form the present tense of the verb **to have**.



## To Have: Present Tense: Negative Form

Place *do not* or *does not* before the verb *to have* to create a negative sentence. It is important to note that *have* is always used in the negative form and never *has*.

| I have    |               | I do not have     |               | I do not have a dishwasher.  |
|-----------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Have    | $\rightarrow$ | 1 do not nave     | $\rightarrow$ | i do not nave a dishwasher.  |
| you have  | $\rightarrow$ | you do not have   | $\rightarrow$ | You do not have a pool.      |
| he has    | $\rightarrow$ | he does not have  | $\rightarrow$ | He does not have a helmet.   |
| she has   | $\rightarrow$ | she does not have | $\rightarrow$ | She does not have braids.    |
| it has    | $\rightarrow$ | it does not have  | $\rightarrow$ | It does not have white paws. |
| we have   | $\rightarrow$ | we do not have    | $\rightarrow$ | We do not have milk.         |
| they have | $\rightarrow$ | they do not have  | $\rightarrow$ | They do not have a daughter. |
|           |               |                   |               |                              |

The negative form of the present tense of the verb *to have* can also be expressed with the contraction *don't* or *doesn't*.

| I do not have     |               | I don't have     |               | I don't have a headache.     |
|-------------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| 1 do not nave     | $\rightarrow$ | 1 don't nave     | $\rightarrow$ | I don't mave a meadache.     |
| you do not have   | $\rightarrow$ | you don't have   | $\rightarrow$ | You don't have a flashlight. |
| he does not have  | $\rightarrow$ | he doesn't have  | $\rightarrow$ | He doesn't have a pen.       |
| she does not have | $\rightarrow$ | she doesn't have | $\rightarrow$ | She doesn't have a lawyer.   |
| it does not have  | $\rightarrow$ | it doesn't have  | $\rightarrow$ | It doesn't have a tail.      |
| we do not have    | $\rightarrow$ | we don't have    | $\rightarrow$ | We don't have a garage.      |
| they do not have  | $\rightarrow$ | they don't have  | $\rightarrow$ | They don't have a computer.  |
| •                 |               | •                |               | _                            |

10.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| 9 | surprise    | fantastic      | nos  | se  |
|---|-------------|----------------|------|-----|
|   | bangs       | customer       | abo  | out |
| ! | straight    | clown          | few  | /   |
| j | jewelry     | antique        | flea | ì   |
|   | screwdriver | brother-in-law |      |     |
| , | snowmobilo  | catallita dich |      |     |

| Rewrite the following sentences to create the negative form of the verb <b>to have</b> .               | Write the sentence once |
|--|-------------------------|
| using <b>do not</b> or <b>does not</b> and once using the contraction <b>don't</b> or <b>doesn't</b> . |                         |

| 1.  | My cat has fleas                     |   |           |  |  |
|-----|--------------------------------------|---|-----------|--|--|
| ••  | my cae nas neas.                     |   |           |  |  |
| 2.  | We have a satellite dish on the      | roof.   |           |  |  |
|     |                                      |   |           |  |  |
| 3.  | I have a surprise for you.           |   |           |  |  |
|     |                                      |   |           |  |  |
| 4.  | Jimmy has a fast snowmobile.         |   |           |  |  |
| 5.  | We have many good books ab           | out antique jewelry.  |           |  |  |
| 6   | She has a lot of customers           |   |           |  |  |
| 0.  |                                      |   |           |  |  |
| 7.  | My brother-in-law has a screw        |   |           |  |  |
|     |                                      |   |           |  |  |
| 8.  | The clown has a big red nose.        |   |           |  |  |
| 9.  | I have long straight hair and bangs. |   |           |  |  |
|     |                                      |   |           |  |  |
| 10. | She has fantastic news.              |   |           |  |  |
|     |                                      |   |           |  |  |
|     |                                      |   |           |  |  |
|     |                                      |   |           |  |  |
|     | XERCISE                              |   |           |  |  |
| _   | •                                    | nd the meaning of the new vocabuld<br>n. Write the words in your language | •         |  |  |
|     | beard                                | job   | doll      |  |  |
|     | mean                                 | saddle  | treadmill |  |  |
|     | office                               | firecracker   | bookmark  |  |  |
|     | shower                               | mouse   | nail file |  |  |
|     | landlady                             | relative  | coat      |  |  |

\_\_\_\_\_ backyard

 $_{-}$  whisker

|     | fur   | curly                                     | diamond                      |
|-----|---|---|------------------------------|
|     | glass   | _ ham                                     | filing cabinet               |
|     | horse   | pet                                       | dandelion                    |
|     | ghost   | trunk                                     | keyboard                     |
|     | cell phone  | German shepherd                           |                              |
|     | plete the following sentences using the contraction to have in the present tense. | on <b>don't</b> or <b>doesn't</b> to cred | ate the negative form of the |
| 1.  | You have curly hair.  |   |                              |
| 2.  | My aunt have a diamond ring.  |   |                              |
| 3.  | Jennifer have a doll.   |   |                              |
| 4.  | He have a ham sandwich.   |   |                              |
| 5.  | I have a new saddle for my horse.   |   |                              |
| 6.  | Glenn have a boring job.  |   |                              |
| 7.  | The boys have firecrackers.   |   |                              |
| 8.  | We have a big back yard.  |   |                              |
| 9.  | I have a cell phone.  |   |                              |
| 10. | The cat have soft fur.  |   |                              |
| 11. | We have relatives in New York.  |   |                              |
| 12. | The mouse have long whiskers.   |   |                              |
| 13. | Samuel have a new keyboard.   |   |                              |
| 14. | I have three pets.  |   |                              |
| 15. | Richard have a German shepherd.   |   |                              |
| 16. | My car have a big trunk.  |   |                              |
| 17. | You have a vacuum.  |   |                              |
| 18. | She have a question.  |   |                              |
| 19. | I have a nail file in my purse.   |   |                              |
| 20. | My boss have a filing cabinet.  |   |                              |
| 21. | We have a mean landlady.  |   |                              |
| 22. | Derrick have a beard.   |   |                              |
| 23. | She have a bookmark for the boo   | k.  |                              |
| 24. | They have a shower in the bathro  | om.                                       |                              |
| 25. | He have a cold.   |   |                              |
| 26. | They have a wealthy uncle.  |   |                              |
| 27. | I have a fur coat.  |   |                              |

| 28. | We have many dandelions in the yard.  |
|-----|---------------------------------------|
| 29. | You have a treadmill in the basement. |
| 30. | The teachers have a meeting today.    |
| 31. | I have a glass of red wine.           |
| 32. | We have a ghost in the attic.         |
| 33. | Jason have a car.                     |
| 34. | Sharon have a toothbrush.             |



## To Have: Present Tense: Question Form

Place *do* or *does* before the subject to create questions with the verb *to have*. As with the negative form, *have* is used for all persons and never *has*.

I have → do I have → Do I have good skills for the job?

you have → do you have → Do you have a headache?

he has → does he have → Does he have a good report card?

she has → does she have → Does she have a red binder?

it has → does it have → Does it have a long tail?

we have → do we have → Do we have a meeting?

they have → do they have → Do they have relatives in Montreal?



Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| scarf                        |         | project     |              | flip-flops   |
|------------------------------|---------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| dove                         |         | meat loaf   |              | important    |
| lease                        |         | pager       |              | everything   |
| rights                       |         | same        |              | appointment  |
| tight                        |         | deadline    |              | celebration  |
| until                        |         | wing        |              | Thanksgiving |
| Christm                      | nas Eve |             | ohone number |              |
| Daywita the fallowing contan |         | ana humlari |              | - +b -       |

Rewrite the following sentences to create questions by placing **do** or **does** before the subject. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer.

- 1. You have a pink eraser.
- 2. He has my phone number. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. They have everything they need. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. We have the same scarf. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. I have rights. \_\_\_\_\_

| 6.  | Marissa has green flip-flops.            |   |               |  |
|-----|--|---|---------------|--|
| 7.  | You have a huge turkey for Thanksgiving. |   |               |  |
| 8.  | They have a lease until next year.       |   |               |  |
| 9.  | It has a funny taste.                    |   |               |  |
| 10. | You have two important appointr          | nents today.  |               |  |
| 11. | The dove has white wings.                |   |               |  |
| 12. | We have a day off next week              |   |               |  |
| 13. | David has a pager.                       |   |               |  |
| 14. | Juanita has a good recipe for mea        | it loaf   |               |  |
| 15. | We have a tight deadline for the p       | project   |               |  |
| 16. | They have a big celebration on Ch        | nristmas Eve  |               |  |
|     |  |   |               |  |
|     | exercise before you begin. W             | ne meaning of the new vocabulary words rite the words in your language in the spa | ace provided. |  |
|     |  | •   | cousin        |  |
|     |  | noodle  | bathrobe      |  |
|     | gold                                     | tie   | ladybug       |  |
|     | claw                                     | show  | necklace      |  |
|     | glasses                                  | time  | bib           |  |
|     | manager                                  | dictionary  | shirt         |  |
|     | leg                                      | tooth   | mattress      |  |
|     | flat                                     | ant   | binoculars    |  |
|     | wrong                                    | bruise  | gym           |  |
|     | Germany                                  | eye   | beaver        |  |
|     | map                                      | poodle  | silk          |  |
|     | better                                   | membership  | polka dot     |  |
|     | marchmallow                              | fay machine   | ccar          |  |

\_\_\_\_\_ e-mail address

Complete the following questions with **do** or **does** to create the question form in the present tense with the verb to have.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ I have lipstick on my tooth? 2. \_\_\_\_\_ you have a new mattress? 3. \_\_\_\_\_ Mike have a black tie? 4. \_\_\_\_\_ the kids have a bag of marshmallows? 5. \_\_\_\_\_ he have the wrong answer? 6. \_\_\_\_\_ I have a bruise on my arm? 7. \_\_\_\_\_ he have a membership for the gym? 8. \_\_\_\_\_ we have binoculars for the show? 9. \_\_\_\_\_ the soup have a lot of noodles? 10. \_\_\_\_\_ it have green eyes? 11. \_\_\_\_\_ you have a better map of the city? 12. \_\_\_\_\_ they have a poodle? 13. \_\_\_\_\_ Carlos have my e-mail address? 14. \_\_\_\_\_ we have winter tires? 15. \_\_\_\_\_ the horse have a saddle? 16. \_\_\_\_\_ it have pink polka dots? 17. \_\_\_\_\_ she have a silk bathrobe? 18. \_\_\_\_\_ the beaver have a flat tail? 19. \_\_\_\_\_ I have a scar on my leg? 20. \_\_\_\_\_ we have a new manager today? 21. \_\_\_\_\_ she have a cousin in Germany? 22. \_\_\_\_\_ you have the receipt in the bag? 23. \_\_\_\_\_ Shaun have new glasses? 24. \_\_\_\_\_ I have a ladybug on my shirt? 25. \_\_\_\_\_ Samantha have a gold necklace? 26. \_\_\_\_\_ we have ants in the basement? 27. \_\_\_\_\_ I have mud on my shoes? 28. \_\_\_\_\_ you have a dictionary? 29. \_\_\_\_\_ they have a fax machine? 30. \_\_\_\_\_ you have a bib for the baby? 31. \_\_\_\_\_ I have the right time? 32. \_\_\_\_\_ the cat have sharp claws?

## The Simple Present Tense



The simple present tense is used when stating general facts or true statements that have no time. Add -s to the verb for *he*, *she*, and *it*.

I need → I need a new computer.

you need → You need a good lawyer.

he needs → He needs a roommate.

she needs → She needs a blanket.

it needs → It needs a lot of work.

we need → We need a flashlight.

they need → They need a new fridge.

Add -es to verbs when using he, she, and it if the verb:

| ends with z, s, x, ss, ch, or sh | ends with o         | a consonant—change the<br>y to i before adding -es |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| I wash the car.                  | I go to school.     | I try very hard.                                   |
| You wash the car.                | You go to school.   | You try very hard.                                 |
| He washes the car.               | He goes to school.  | He tries very hard.                                |
| She washes the car.              | She goes to school. | She tries very hard.                               |
| It washes the car.               | It goes to school.  | It tries very hard.                                |
| We wash the car.                 | We go to school.    | We try very hard.                                  |
| They wash the car.               | They go to school.  | They try very hard.                                |

| EXERCISE |  |  |  |
|----------|--|--|--|
| 12.1     |  |  |  |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| to amaze     | <br>to help | to blush       |
|--------------|-------------|----------------|
| <br>to cry   | <br>to see  | <br>to smoke   |
| <br>to guard | <br>to kiss | <br>to flush   |
| to jump      | <br>to go   | <br>to scratch |

|     | village  | American _                 | king                        |  |  |
|-----|--|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|
|     | toilet   | kingdom _                  | every                       |  |  |
|     | knight   | castle _                   | caramel                     |  |  |
|     | cigarette  | apple _                    | people                      |  |  |
|     | te the following sentences with the correct<br>theses. | t form of the simple prese | ent tense using the verb in |  |  |
| 1.  | He (to smoke) American cigarettes.                     |                            |                             |  |  |
| 2.  | Karen (to blush) when she (to see) th                  | nat boy                    |                             |  |  |
| 3.  | I (to love) caramel apple cake.                        |                            |                             |  |  |
| 4.  | He (to cry) like a baby                                |                            |                             |  |  |
| 5.  | It (to amaze) me                                       |                            |                             |  |  |
| 6.  | It (to jump) very high                                 |                            |                             |  |  |
| 7.  | He (to kiss) all the girls in school.                  |                            |                             |  |  |
| 8.  | My cats (to scratch) the furniture                     |                            |                             |  |  |
| 9.  | They (to help) many people in the vi                   | illage                     |                             |  |  |
| 10. | The knights (to guard) the king and                    | castle in the kingdom      | ·                           |  |  |
|     |  |                            |                             |  |  |
| 11. | He never (to flush) the toilet.                        |                            |                             |  |  |
|     |  |                            |                             |  |  |
|     |  |                            |                             |  |  |

EXERCISE

*Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words* needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| to crush       | <br>to make  | <br>to follow  |
|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| <br>to spoil   | <br>to push  | <br>to whisper |
| <br>to explain | <br>to drive | <br>to carry   |
| to manage      | <br>to melt  | <br>to owe     |
| to dream       | <br>to buy   | <br>to earn    |
| <br>to own     | <br>to eat   | <br>to obey    |
| <br>to do      | <br>to fear  |                |
|                |              |                |
| <br>paramedic  | <br>patient  | <br>spring     |
| lemon          | rule         | local          |

|     | mone                            | у                          | _ cottage                       | _ everywhere      |
|-----|---------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|
|     | stretc                          | her                        | tea                             | _ Laundromat      |
|     | carria                          | ge                         | laundry                         | _ housework       |
|     | perfui                          | me                         | _ child                         | _ restaurant      |
|     | raw                             |                            | onion                           | _ waterfalls      |
|     | bank                            |                            | grape                           | _ nothing         |
|     | plete the following serntheses. | ntences with the correct f | orm of the simple present tense | using the verb in |
| 1.  | My teacher                      | (to explain                | n) everything.                  |                   |
| 2.  | We                              | (to whisper) in cla        | SS.                             |                   |
| 3.  | He                              | (to crush) grapes t        | o make wine.                    |                   |
| 4.  | Lisa                            | (to buy) a lot of p        | erfume.                         |                   |
| 5.  | 1                               | (to do) the housewo        | rk for my mother.               |                   |
| 6.  | They                            | (to earn) a lot of         | money.                          |                   |
| 7.  | Linda                           | (to work) down             | town.                           |                   |
| 8.  | My uncle                        | (to manage)                | a restaurant.                   |                   |
| 9.  | The paramedics $\_$             | (to ca                     | arry) the patient on a stretch  | er.               |
| 10. | You                             | (to owe) me mon            | ey.                             |                   |
| 11. | My grandmother                  | (to e                      | eat) raw onions.                |                   |
| 12. | He                              | (to fear) nothing.         |                                 |                   |
| 13. | They                            | (to follow) me e           | verywhere.                      |                   |
| 14. | 1                               | (to work) in the local     | bank.                           |                   |
| 15. | She                             | (to drink) tea with        | n lemon.                        |                   |
| 16. | Jessica                         | (to push) the k            | oaby in a carriage.             |                   |
| 17. | He                              | (to spoil) his child.      |                                 |                   |
| 18. | Connie                          | (to dream) abo             | out waterfalls.                 |                   |
| 19. | Leo                             | (to drive) to work         |                                 |                   |
| 20. | My husband                      | (to do) tl                 | ne laundry.                     |                   |
| 21. | She                             | (to go) to the Lau         | ndromat every week.             |                   |
| 22. | We                              | (to own) a cottage         | e in the country.               |                   |
| 23. | The boys                        | (to obey) th               | e rules in class.               |                   |
| 24. | The snow                        | (to melt) in               | the spring.                     |                   |
|     |                                 |                            |                                 |                   |

# 13

# The Simple Present Tense: Negative Form

Place *do not* or *does not* before the verb to create the negative form of the simple present tense. The simple form of the verb is always used. Never add *-s* to *he*, *she*, and *it* in the negative form of the simple present tense.

| ot wear orange.         |
|-------------------------|
| o not wear perfume.     |
| es not wear diapers.    |
| oes not wear a watch.   |
| s not wear shoes.       |
| not wear slippers.      |
| lo not wear nail polish |
| (                       |

The negative form of the simple present tense can also be expressed with the contraction *don't* or *doesn't*.

| he does not drink she does not drink | <ul><li>→</li><li>→</li><li>→</li><li>→</li></ul> | you don't drink<br>he doesn't drink<br>she doesn't drink<br>it doesn't drink | <ul><li>→</li><li>→</li><li>→</li><li>→</li></ul> | I don't drink apple juice.<br>You don't drink wine.<br>He doesn't drink lemon juice.<br>She doesn't drink milk.<br>It doesn't drink water.<br>We don't drink or smoke. |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|---|--|
| we do not drink                      | $\rightarrow$                                     | we don't drink   | $\rightarrow$                                     | We don't drink or smoke.   |
| they do not drink                    | $\rightarrow$                                     | they don't drink   | $\rightarrow$                                     | They don't drink and drive.  |

EXERCISE 13.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>to sell    | <br>to trust     |        | to snore |
|----------------|------------------|--------|----------|
| <br>to yell    | <br>to dislike   |        | to swear |
| <br>to collect | <br>_ to believe | •      |          |
| meat           | fish             |        | coin     |
|                |                  |        |          |
| <br>language   | <br>_ sewing m   | achine |          |

| My husband snores every nig     | Jht   |                      |
|---------------------------------|---|----------------------|
| believe your story about the    | e giant monkeys   |                      |
| Nancy and Yvan collect coins    |   |                      |
|                                 | nguages   |                      |
|                                 |   |                      |
| Ron swears and yells in class.  |   |                      |
| Sara sells sewing machines.     |   |                      |
| trust you.                      |   |                      |
| We eat meat                     |   |                      |
|                                 |   |                      |
| RCISE 3.2                       |   |                      |
| Use your dictionary to fi       | ind the meaning of the following verb<br>you begin. Write the words in your lan | -                    |
| to bother                       | to study  | to iron              |
|                                 |   |                      |
| to gossip                       | to travel   | to deserve           |
| 3 .                             |   | to deserve to sneeze |
| to live                         | to listen   |                      |
| to live<br>to smell             | to listen<br>to cook  | to sneeze            |
| to live<br>to smell<br>to learn | to listen to cook to cough  | to sneeze to forgive |

\_\_\_\_\_ office

\_\_\_\_\_ coffee

\_\_\_\_\_ stray

\_\_\_\_\_ ponytail

|     | hard   | clothes                         | cotton candy                      |
|-----|--|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
|     | towel  | alone                           | cockroach                         |
|     | plete the following sentences using the e present tense. | contraction don't or doesn't to | o create the negative form of the |
| 1.  | It work well.  |                                 |                                   |
| 2.  | We feed the stray cats.                                  |                                 |                                   |
| 3.  | I dream a lot.   |                                 |                                   |
| 4.  | Mark want pancakes for k                                 | oreakfast.                      |                                   |
| 5.  | I iron my clothes.                                       |                                 |                                   |
| 6.  | It bother me.  |                                 |                                   |
| 7.  | She write to Bob.  |                                 |                                   |
| 8.  | I cook every night.                                      |                                 |                                   |
| 9.  | He listen to me.   |                                 |                                   |
| 10. | I travel alone.  |                                 |                                   |
| 11. | She know you.  |                                 |                                   |
| 12. | It hurt.   |                                 |                                   |
| 13. | You deserve that.  |                                 |                                   |
| 14. | They like cockroaches.                                   |                                 |                                   |
| 15. | Roger want cotton candy                                  |                                 |                                   |
| 16. | I owe you money.   |                                 |                                   |
| 17. | She sneeze all the time.                                 |                                 |                                   |
| 18. | You drink coffee.  |                                 |                                   |
| 19. | It smell good.   |                                 |                                   |
| 20. | He cough at night.                                       |                                 |                                   |
| 21. | My dog snore.  |                                 |                                   |
| 22. | You laugh a lot.   |                                 |                                   |
| 23. | He study very hard.                                      |                                 |                                   |
| 24. | Betty gossip in the office.                              |                                 |                                   |
| 25. | I forgive you.   |                                 |                                   |
| 26. | They learn a lot in class.                               |                                 |                                   |
| 27. | Glenn live here.   |                                 |                                   |
| 28. | It belong to you.  |                                 |                                   |
| 29. | I need a towel.  |                                 |                                   |
| 30. | Latonya want a ponytail i                                | n her hair.                     |                                   |

# The Simple Present Tense: Question Form



Place *do* or *does* before the subject to create questions in the simple present tense. The simple form of the verb is used when creating questions in the simple present tense.

| I dream   | $\rightarrow$ | do I dream    | $\rightarrow$ | Do I dream a lot?         |
|-----------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| you work  | $\rightarrow$ | do you work   | $\rightarrow$ | Do you work well?         |
| he sees   | $\rightarrow$ | does he see   | $\rightarrow$ | Does he see the clock?    |
| she wears | $\rightarrow$ | does she wear | $\rightarrow$ | Does she wear flip-flops? |
| it hates  | $\rightarrow$ | does it hate  | $\rightarrow$ | Does it hate milk?        |
| we want   | $\rightarrow$ | do we want    | $\rightarrow$ | Do we want a dog?         |
| they own  | $\rightarrow$ | do they own   | $\rightarrow$ | Do they own the house?    |

EXERCISE 14.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>to touch  | <br>to read | <br>to cos  |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| <br>to scream | <br>to boil | <br>to play |
| to skate      | <br>to put  |             |
| mortgage      | <br>train   | <br>fox     |
| on time       | <br>soldier | <br>horror  |
| <br>afternoon | dough       | <br>woods   |
| <br>pepper    | <br>crown   | <br>night   |
| <br>newspaper | <br>hobby   | <br>salt    |
| everything    |             |             |

Rewrite the following sentences to create the question form of the simple present tense. Place **do** or **does** before the subject and use the simple form of the verb. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer.

- 1. She skates in the morning. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. They boil the vegetables. \_\_\_\_\_

| 3.  | He sleeps in the afternoon.                   |
|-----|---|
| 4.  | The boys play chess at night                  |
| 5.  | You pay the mortgage on time                  |
| 6.  | She reads the English newspaper.              |
| 7.  | They drive to work together.                  |
| 8.  | It costs \$20 to travel by train to the city. |
| 9.  | She screams when she watches horror movies.   |
| 10. | She wants a new hobby                         |
| 11. | The king wears a red velvet crown.            |
| 12. | Bobby plays with toy soldiers.                |
| 13. | You put salt and pepper in the dough.         |
| 14. | Jackie touches everything in my office.       |
| 15. | You see the fox in the woods.                 |
|     |   |

EXERCISE 14.2

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>to agree       | <br>to rent   |      | to dye   |
|--------------------|---------------|------|----------|
| <br>to annoy       | <br>to fish   |      | to chase |
| <br>to increase    | <br>to feel   |      | to weigh |
| to disturb         | <br>to walk   |      | to snow  |
| <br>to interest    | <br>to mix    |      | to park  |
| <br>to participate |               |      |          |
| <br>credit card    | <br>children  |      | smoke    |
| <br>piggy bank     | <br>facecloth |      | truth    |
| <br>cigar          | <br>change    |      | pea      |
| <br>lobster        | <br>worm      |      | pound    |
| <br>house          | <br>coupon    |      | glove    |
| noise              | <br>sick      |      | mushroom |
| <br>driveway       | <br>minimum   | wage |          |

| 1.  | he annoy you?                         |
|-----|---------------------------------------|
| 2.  | you pay with your credit card?        |
| 3.  | it snow in your country?              |
| 4.  | you need change?                      |
| 5.  | we agree?                             |
| 6.  | the minimum wage increase every year? |
| 7.  | you need a facecloth?                 |
| 8.  | he know the truth?                    |
| 9.  | you see the smoke?                    |
| 10. | Chris and Jim rent a house?           |
| 11. | Joan have black gloves?               |
| 12. | you feel sick?                        |
| 13. | he park in the driveway?              |
| 14. | it interest you?                      |
| 15. | they want the coupons?                |
| 16. | she mix the eggs with the milk?       |
| 17. | the noise disturb you?                |
| 18. | the children like peas?               |
| 19. | they walk to school?                  |
| 20. | your dog chase cats?                  |
| 21. | it weigh twenty pounds?               |
| 22. | you eat lobster?                      |
| 23. | she have a piggy bank?                |
| 24. | you fish with worms?                  |
| 25. | Jerry smoke cigars?                   |
| 26. | you dye your hair?                    |
| 27. | they like mushrooms?                  |
| 28. | Leslie participate at school?         |
|     |                                       |

Complete the following sentences using **do** or **does** to create questions in the simple present tense.



## Possessive Adjectives

Possessive adjectives are used to show ownership or possession of someone or something. They are placed before the noun.

EXERCISE 15.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>to dress | <br>to burn   | to take   |
|--------------|---------------|-----------|
| <br>to open  | <br>to visit  | to wash   |
| <br>to keep  | <br>to bite   | to hide   |
| <br>to lick  | <br>to wipe   | to forget |
|              |               |           |
| <br>master   | <br>sleeve    | mail      |
| <br>sponge   | <br>sailor    | stair     |
| <br>under    | jewel         | carpet    |
| <br>homework | <br>apartment |           |
| submarine    |               |           |

Rewrite the following sentences by choosing the correct possessive adjective indicated in parentheses that refers back to the subject pronoun.

- 1. She visits (their, her) relatives every summer.
- 2. We hide (our, your) money under the carpet in the master bedroom. \_\_\_\_

| 3.  | . They keep (his, their) jewels in a jewelry box. |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----|---|--|------------|--|--|--|--|--|
|     | I wash (your, my) stairs with a sponge.           |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | He passes all (our, his) exams.                   |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | She dresses (her, his) dolls in pink.             |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7.  | l open (my, your) mail after breakfast.           |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8.  | He bites (my, his) nails.                         |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
| 9.  | We rent (my, our) apartment.                      |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
| 10. | It licks (its, their) paws.                       |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
| 11. | I burn (your, my) marshmallow                     | /S   |            |  |  |  |  |  |
| 12. | Jeff takes (his, our) pills in the                | morning  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
| 13. | The boys forget (my, their) hor                   | mework every day   |            |  |  |  |  |  |
|     |   |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
| 14. | He wipes (his, her) nose on (m                    | y, his) sleeve.  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
| 15. | She dyes (her, your) hair.                        |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
| 16. | The sailors believe (their, my) i                 | new submarine is better  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | KERCISE   |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | Use your dictionary to fir                        | nd the meaning of the following voefore you begin. Write the words | •          |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | to ride   | to curl  | to lace    |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | to fry  | to leave   | to give    |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | to sail   | to argue   | to protect |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | to sell   | to cut   | to use     |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | to fly  | to hang  | to demand  |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | to greet  |  |            |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | world   | day care   | head       |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | boat  | footprint  | skate      |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | sand  | fireman  | lawn mower |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | market  | kite   | freedom    |  |  |  |  |  |

\_\_\_\_\_ week

\_\_\_\_ around

\_\_\_\_\_ curling iron

|      | water   | skim                               | sunglasses |
|------|---|------------------------------------|------------|
|      | bike  | diary                              | arena      |
|      | field   | boot                               | fireplace  |
| Сотр | plete the sentences using the correct possess | ive adjective according to the sul | bject.     |
| 1.   | They sail boat around the wor                 | dd.                                |            |
| 2.   | She fries eggs in butter.                     |                                    |            |
| 3.   | We give old clothes to Peter.                 |                                    |            |
| 4.   | I ride bike to school.                        |                                    |            |
| 5.   | She curls hair with a curling ir              | on.                                |            |
| 6.   | You need dark sunglasses.                     |                                    |            |
| 7.   | I lace skates at the arena.                   |                                    |            |
| 8.   | It drinks water.                              |                                    |            |
| 9.   | We sell vegetables at the mark                | ket.                               |            |
| 10.  | The fireman wears black boot                  | S.                                 |            |
| 11.  | The twins love and protect br                 | other.                             |            |
| 12.  | I greet guests.                               |                                    |            |
| 13.  | They argue with neighbors.                    |                                    |            |
| 14.  | He needs lawyer.                              |                                    |            |
| 15.  | We demand rights.                             |                                    |            |
| 16.  | He uses lawn mower to cut th                  | e grass.                           |            |
| 17.  | I scratch head.                               |                                    |            |
| 18.  | She hangs clothes on the clot                 | hesline.                           |            |
| 19.  | They clean fireplace every we                 | ek.                                |            |
| 20.  | I drink tea with skim milk.                   |                                    |            |
| 21.  | Laura loves husband.                          |                                    |            |
| 22.  | You want freedom.                             |                                    |            |
| 23.  | We leave kids at the day care.                |                                    |            |
| 24.  | She writes in diary.                          |                                    |            |
| 25.  | He flies kite in the field.                   |                                    |            |
| 26   | Lsee footprints in the sand                   |                                    |            |

## The Simple Past Tense



The simple past is used to describe an action that happened in the recent past. Follow these rules to create the simple past tense with regular verbs.

Add -ed to the simple form of the verb.

#### to visit

I visited you visited he visited she visited it visited we visited they visited

When -ed is added to verbs that end in d, pronounce the last syllable separately.

#### to need

I need-ed you need-ed he need-ed she need-ed it need-ed we need-ed they need-ed Add only -d if the verb ends with e.

#### to believe

I believed you believed he believed she believed it believed we believed they believed

When -ed is added to verbs that end in t, pronounce the last syllable separately.

#### to want

I want-ed you want-ed he want-ed she want-ed it want-ed we want-ed they want-ed Delete y and add -ied to the simple form of the verb if the verb ends in y preceded by a consonant.

#### to cry

I cried you cried he cried she cried it cried we cried they cried

The ending of all other regular verbs is pronounced as one syllable when -ed is added.

#### to open

I opened you opened he opened she opened it opened we opened they opened

EXERCISE 16.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>to answer   | to re | ward  | to try |
|-----------------|-------|-------|--------|
| <br>to increase | to no | otice | to lie |

|                          | to share                        | to land   | to sign              |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|---|----------------------|
|                          | to kill                         | to dry  | to challenge         |
|                          | hair dryer                      | ditch   | age                  |
|                          | upside down                     | inside out  | sweater              |
|                          | snack                           | another   | toad                 |
|                          | lease                           | eel   | building             |
| Rewrite th<br>verb in pa |                                 | le past tense by adding <b>-ed</b> or <b>-ied</b> to the                            | e simple form of the |
| 1. I (to                 | use) my hair dryer to dry my    | / hair  |                      |
| 2. We                    | (to try) a new recipe last nigh | nt  |                      |
| 3. Tho                   | omas (to answer) the phone.     |   |                      |
| 4. I (to                 | o notice) that your sweater wa  | as inside out   |                      |
| 5. The                   | e car (to land) upside down in  | the ditch   |                      |
| 6. She                   | e (to share) her snack with her | friends at school yesterday   |                      |
| 7. The                   | e minimum wage (to increase)    | last year   |                      |
| 8. Suz                   | anne (to lie) about her age     |   |                      |
| 9. My                    | company (to sign) the lease f   | or our building for another three ye  | ars                  |
| 10. The                  | e teacher (to challenge) her st | udents and (to reward) them for the   | ir hard work         |
| 11. The                  | eel (to kill) the toad.         |   |                      |
|                          |                                 |   |                      |
| EXERCI                   |                                 |   |                      |
| 16.                      | Use your dictionary to find     | the meaning of the following verbs and vore you begin. Write the words in your land |                      |
|                          | to destroy                      | to please   | to tidy              |

\_\_\_\_\_ to describe \_\_\_\_\_\_ to expect

|     | to rain                                    | to serve  | _ to obtain |
|-----|--|---|-------------|
|     | to knock                                   | to deny   | _ to prove  |
|     | to borrow                                  | to accept   | _ to join   |
|     | to avoid                                   | to marry  | _ to paint  |
|     | to move                                    | to arrest   |             |
|     | in-line skates                             | in detail   | _ door      |
|     | contract                                   | someone   | _ makeup    |
|     | lawn                                       | weekend   | _ collision |
|     | accident                                   | terms   | doctor      |
|     | everybody                                  | audience  | _ alert     |
|     | innocent                                   | conditions  | _ appetizer |
|     | plain                                      | passport  | singer      |
|     | army                                       | court   | _ police    |
|     | plete the sentences using the sinar verbs. | mple past tense by adding <b>-ed</b> or <b>-ied</b> to the simple for | rm of these |
| 1.  | We (to a                                   | ccept) the terms and conditions of the contract.                      |             |
| 2.  | My brother                                 | (to join) the army.   |             |
| 3.  | My neighbors                               | (to move) to Vancouver.   |             |
| 4.  | Someone                                    | $_{-}$ (to knock) on the door.  |             |
| 5.  | He (to d                                   | escribe) the accident in detail.                                      |             |
| 6.  | I (to pro                                  | ve) that I was innocent in court.                                     |             |
| 7.  | The man                                    | (to deny) everything.   |             |
| 8.  | Tina (to                                   | borrow) my in-line skates.  |             |
| 9.  | They (to                                   | watch) the kids in the pool.  |             |
| 10. | She (to u                                  | use) my makeup.   |             |
| 11. | I (to tidy                                 | ) the house for my mother.  |             |
| 12. | It (to rain                                | n) all day.   |             |
| 13. | My husband                                 | (to paint) the bathroom on the weekend.                               |             |
| 14. | I was alert and I                          | (to avoid) the collision.   |             |
| 15. | We (to p                                   | oush) the baby in the carriage.                                       |             |
| 16. | My cousin                                  | _ (to marry) a doctor.  |             |
| 17. | The singer                                 | (to please) the audience.   |             |
| 18. | Your dog                                   | (to destroy) my lawn.   |             |

| 19. | We         | (to serve) appetizers to our guests. |
|-----|------------|--------------------------------------|
| 20. | Mike       | (to obtain) his passport.            |
| 21. | The police | (to arrest) everybody.               |
| 22. | We         | (to order) a plain pizza last night. |
| 23. | 1          | (to decide) to learn English.        |
| 24. | We         | (to expect) to see you there.        |

# The Simple Past Tense with Irregular Verbs: 1

Some verbs do not use the -ed ending to express the past tense. These are irregular verbs, and they have unique past tense forms. They have the same form for all persons in the past tense, and they must be memorized.

| to hide (hid) | to drink (drank) | to wear (wore) | to go (went) |
|---------------|------------------|----------------|--------------|
| I hid         | I drank          | I wore         | I went       |
| you hid       | you drank        | you wore       | you went     |
| he hid        | he drank         | he wore        | he went      |
| she hid       | she drank        | she wore       | she went     |
| it hid        | it drank         | it wore        | it went      |
| we hid        | we drank         | we wore        | we went      |
| they hid      | they drank       | they wore      | they went    |

EXERCISE 17.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following irregular verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| to feel       | $\rightarrow$ | felt   |          | to do    | $\rightarrow$ | did    |
|---------------|---------------|--------|----------|----------|---------------|--------|
| <br>to bite   | $\rightarrow$ | bit    |          | to find  | $\rightarrow$ | found  |
| <br>to blow   | $\rightarrow$ | blew   |          | to fall  | $\rightarrow$ | fell   |
| <br>to shake  | $\rightarrow$ | shook  |          | to cut   | $\rightarrow$ | cut    |
| <br>to tear   | $\rightarrow$ | tore   |          | to break | $\rightarrow$ | broke  |
| <br>to slide  | $\rightarrow$ | slid   |          | to buy   | $\rightarrow$ | bought |
| <br>to spend  | $\rightarrow$ | spent  |          | to take  | $\rightarrow$ | took   |
| to teach      | $\rightarrow$ | taught |          |          |               |        |
|               |               |        |          |          |               |        |
| <br>honeymod  | on            |        | dishes   |          |               | when   |
| <br>earthquak | e             |        | saw      |          |               | pants  |
| <br>grandpare | nt            |        | cup      |          |               | math   |
| <br>toboggan  |               |        | overseas |          |               | after  |

|     | Ireland   | down                    | gift                             |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----|---|-------------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|     | finger  | favorite                | ankle                            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | mountain  | high school             |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | te the following sentences in the simple past t<br>theses.        | ense using the irregula | r past tense form of the verb in |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1.  | She (to blow) on her soup because it wa                           | as hot                  |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2.  | . The house (to shake) a lot during the earthquake                |                         |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3.  | They (to take) the plane and (to spend) their honeymoon overseas. |                         |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4.  | I always (to feel) sick when I was pregna                         | ant                     |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5.  | He (to tear) his pants when he (to fall).                         |                         |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 6.  | We (to buy) a nice gift for our grandpare                         | ents in Ireland         |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7.  | The kids (to slide) down the mountain of                          | on their new tobogg     | an                               |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8.  | I (to do) the dishes after supper.                                |                         |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 9.  | I (to cut) my finger on the sharp saw. $\_$                       |                         |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 10. | You (to break) my favorite cup.                                   |                         |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 11. | Your dog (to bite) my ankle.                                      |                         |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 12. | Karen (to find) a purse at the beach                              |                         |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 13. | I (to teach) math at the high school last                         | year                    |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|     |   |                         |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| EX  | XERCISE 7.2   |                         |                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

*Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following irregular verbs and vocabulary* words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>to speak | $\rightarrow$ | spoke | $\longrightarrow$ to draw $\rightarrow$  | drew  |
|--------------|---------------|-------|--|-------|
| <br>to hold  | $\rightarrow$ | held  | $\longrightarrow$ to leave $\rightarrow$ | left  |
| <br>to pay   | $\rightarrow$ | paid  | $\longrightarrow$ to swear $\rightarrow$ | swore |
| <br>to steal | $\rightarrow$ | stole | to sit →                                 | sat   |

|     |                                    | to hang      | $\rightarrow$ | hung             |                     | to hear        | $\rightarrow$ | heard              |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------------|---------------|------------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------|--------------------|
|     |                                    | to shoot     | $\rightarrow$ | shot             |                     | to see         | $\rightarrow$ | saw                |
|     |                                    | to begin     | $\rightarrow$ | began            |                     | to give        | $\rightarrow$ | gave               |
|     |                                    | to dig       | $\rightarrow$ | dug              |                     |                |               |                    |
|     |                                    | niece        |               |                  | plastic             |                |               | _ midnight         |
|     |                                    | front        |               |                  | broom               |                |               | _ party            |
|     |                                    | store        |               |                  | great               |                |               | _ stop sign        |
|     |                                    | whistle      |               |                  | swing               |                |               | _ shoplifter       |
|     |                                    | thing        |               |                  | speech              |                |               | _ crossing guard   |
|     |                                    | pantry       |               |                  | calculator          |                |               | _ pink flamingo    |
|     |                                    | bored        |               |                  | problem             |                |               | _ nephew           |
|     |                                    | witch        |               |                  | tunnel              |                |               | _ underground      |
|     | olete the follov<br>ated in parent |              | ces in        | the simple p     | ast tense using the | irregular pasi | t tense       | e form of the verb |
| 1.  | The teache                         | rs           |               | (to spe          | eak) about the co   | mputer pro     | blem          | s in detail.       |
| 2.  | 1                                  | (to          | begi          | n) my hom        | nework after scho   | ol.            |               |                    |
| 3.  | He                                 |              | (to gi        | ve) money        | to his niece and    | nephew for     | their         | birthdays.         |
| 4.  | She                                |              | (to h         | ang) the w       | histle around her   | r neck.        |               |                    |
| 5.  | I                                  | (to          | see)          | the shopli       | fter in the store.  |                |               |                    |
| 6.  | We                                 |              | (to si        | t) on the sv     | wings and talked    | about many     | / thin        | gs.                |
| 7.  | Somebody                           |              |               | $_{-}$ (to steal | ) my calculator ar  | nd pencils a   | t sch         | ool.               |
| 8.  | I                                  | (to          | pay)          | a lot of me      | oney for the plast  | tic pink flam  | ingo          | s on my front      |
|     | lawn.                              |              |               |                  |                     |                |               |                    |
| 9.  | Cheyenne _                         |              |               | (to draw)        | a nice picture of   | a witch on     | a bro         | oom.               |
| 10. | David                              |              | (to           | swear) in        | class today.        |                |               |                    |
| 11. | The worker                         | S            |               | (to dig          | ) a big undergrou   | and tunnel.    |               |                    |
| 12. | The crossin                        | g guard $\_$ |               |                  | (to hold) the stop  | o sign in her  | left          | hand.              |
| 13. | The police                         |              |               | _ (to shoo       | t) the man in the   | leg.           |               |                    |
|     | We                                 |              | (to he        | aar) vour ci     |                     | and it was a   | ıroət         |                    |
| 14. |                                    |              | (10 110       | ear) your sp     | beech last night, a | and it was g   | neat.         |                    |
|     |                                    |              |               |                  | idnight because t   | _              |               |                    |



EXERCISE

# The Simple Past Tense with Irregular Verbs: 2

Some verbs do not use the **-ed** ending to express the past tense. These are irregular verbs, and they have unique past tense forms. They have the same form for all persons in the past tense, and they must be memorized.

| 19.1 | Use your dictior                   | nary          | to find       | the m | eaning of th | e follo | wing irregula | ır ver        | bs        |
|------|------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|-------|--------------|---------|---------------|---------------|-----------|
|      | and vocabulary<br>words in your lo |               |               |       |              |         | re you begin. | Writ          | e the     |
|      | to lend                            | $\rightarrow$ | lent          | -     |              |         | to freeze     | $\rightarrow$ | froze     |
|      | to have                            | $\rightarrow$ | had           | -     |              |         | to catch      | $\rightarrow$ | caught    |
|      | to drive                           | $\rightarrow$ | drove         | -     |              |         | to beat       | $\rightarrow$ | beat      |
|      | to come                            | $\rightarrow$ | came          | -     |              |         | to ride       | $\rightarrow$ | rode      |
|      | to wake                            | $\rightarrow$ | woke          | _     |              |         | to bend       | $\rightarrow$ | bent      |
|      | to build                           | $\rightarrow$ | built         | -     |              |         | to sleep      | $\rightarrow$ | slept     |
|      | to forget                          | $\rightarrow$ | forgo         | t     |              |         |               |               |           |
|      | to underst                         | tand          | d →           | unde  | erstood      |         |               |               |           |
|      | to withdra                         | aw            | $\rightarrow$ | with  | drew         |         |               |               |           |
|      | bacon _                            |               |               |       | cheese       |         |               | _ en          | iough     |
|      | stamp _                            |               |               |       | bullfrog     |         |               | _ ta          | dpole     |
|      | rifle _                            |               |               |       | hanger       |         |               | _ en          | velope    |
|      | sheep _                            |               |               |       | hunter       |         |               | _ pc          | st office |
|      | hay _                              |               |               |       | lamb         |         |               | _ sa          | nd castle |
|      | first _                            |               |               |       | bagel        |         |               | _ Wa          | arehouse  |
|      | lunch _                            |               |               |       | month        |         |               | _ in          | ventory   |
|      | barn _                             |               |               |       | whole        |         |               | _ let         | tuce      |
|      |                                    |               |               |       |              |         |               |               |           |

| aren | theses.  |
|------|--|
| 1.   | We (to withdraw) enough money for the whole month.                     |
| 2.   | I (to catch) a bullfrog and four tadpoles in the pond.                 |
| 3.   | Salina (to ride) a horse for the first time yesterday.                 |
| 4.   | Robert, Claire, and Daniel (to build) a huge sand castle on the beach. |
| 5.   | Brandon (to bend) the hanger to open the car door.                     |
| 6.   | I (to drive) to the post office to buy some stamps and envelopes.      |
| 7.   | The hunter (to forget) his rifle in the woods.                         |
| 8.   | You (to wake) your grandmother when you knocked on the window.         |
| 9.   | The sheep and lamb (to sleep) on the hay in the barn.                  |
| 10.  | I (to have) a bagel with bacon, tomato, cheese, and lettuce for lunch. |
| 11.  | Camilie (to understand) what the teacher taught in class today.        |
| 12.  | My mother (to freeze) the vegetables for the winter.                   |
| 13.  | Dimitri (to lend) the shovel to his neighbor.                          |
| 14.  | The red team (to beat) the blue team.                                  |
| 15.  | Laurent (to come) to help us with the inventory in the warehouse.      |
|      |  |

Rewrite the following sentences in the simple past tense using the irregular past tense form of the verb in

| EXERCISE |  |
|----------|--|
| 18.2     |  |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following irregular verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

|     |  | to shut     | $\rightarrow$ | shut             |                               | _ to keep      | $\rightarrow$ | kept              |
|-----|--|-------------|---------------|------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|---------------|-------------------|
|     |  | to bring    | $\rightarrow$ | brought          |                               | _ to rise      | $\rightarrow$ | rose              |
|     |  | to win      | $\rightarrow$ | won              |                               | _ to mean      | $\rightarrow$ | meant             |
|     |  | to send     | $\rightarrow$ | sent             |                               | _ to hurt      | $\rightarrow$ | hurt              |
|     |  | to choose   | $\rightarrow$ | chose            |                               | _ to put       | $\rightarrow$ | put               |
|     |  | to grow     | $\rightarrow$ | grew             |                               | _ to lose      | $\rightarrow$ | lost              |
|     |  | to cost     | $\rightarrow$ | cost             |                               | _ to think     | $\rightarrow$ | thought           |
|     |  | to forgive  | $\rightarrow$ | forgave          |                               |                |               |                   |
|     |  | package     | _             |                  | _ bride _                     |                |               | <sub>-</sub> nail |
|     |  | cookie      | _             |                  | _ gardener _                  |                |               | screw             |
|     |  | early       | _             |                  | $_{-}$ hearing aid $_{\cdot}$ |                |               | even though       |
|     |  | toe         | _             |                  | _ deaf _                      |                |               | gift certificate  |
|     |  | cauliflower | _             |                  | _ hand _                      |                |               | weed              |
|     |  | gorgeous    | _             |                  | _ airmail                     |                |               | _ as              |
|     |  | joke        | _             |                  | _ umbrella _                  |                |               | groom             |
|     |  | park        | _             |                  | _ blind _                     |                |               | _ cabbage         |
|     | plete the follo<br>ated in parent                                    | -           | s in t        | he simple past t | ense using the irreg          | gular past ten | se fo         | rm of the verb    |
| 1.  | I (to bring) my umbrella when we went for a walk in the park.        |             |               |                  |                               |                |               |                   |
| 2.  | It (to cost) a lot, but it was gorgeous and we loved it.             |             |               |                  |                               |                |               |                   |
| 3.  | The sun (to rise) early this morning.                                |             |               |                  |                               |                |               |                   |
| 4.  | He (to win) a gift certificate at the Christmas party.               |             |               |                  |                               |                |               |                   |
| 5.  | We (to grow) cabbages, cauliflowers, and pumpkins in our garden last |             |               |                  |                               |                |               |                   |
|     | summer.  |             |               |                  |                               |                |               |                   |
| 6.  | The gardener (to put) the weeds in the garbage can.                  |             |               |                  |                               |                |               |                   |
| 7.  | I (to mean) that as a joke.  |             |               |                  |                               |                |               |                   |
| 8.  | Jasmin (to shut) the door on her toe.                                |             |               |                  |                               |                |               |                   |
| 9.  | The bride and groom (to choose) a beautiful wedding cake.            |             |               |                  |                               |                |               |                   |
| 10. | Even though he lied, she (to forgive) him.                           |             |               |                  |                               |                |               |                   |

| 11. | l  | to think) you liked peas.                             |  |  |  |  |
|-----|--|---|--|--|--|--|
| 12. | Sharon is blind and deaf, and she (to lose) her hearing aid. |   |  |  |  |  |
| 13. | lt   | (to hurt) when the cat scratched my hand.             |  |  |  |  |
| 14. | My father  | (to keep) the nails and screws in jars in the garage. |  |  |  |  |
| 15. | He   | (to send) the package by airmail.                     |  |  |  |  |
| 16. | We   | (to drink) milk with our cookies.                     |  |  |  |  |
|     |  |   |  |  |  |  |



EXERCISE

# The Simple Past Tense with Irregular Verbs: 3

Some verbs do not use the -ed ending to express the past tense. These are irregular verbs, and they have unique past tense forms. They have the same form for all persons in the past tense, and they must be memorized.

| а | nd vocabulary | / WOI         | ds needed i | meaning of the follow<br>for this exercise before<br>space provided. |            |               |            |
|---|---------------|---------------|-------------|--|------------|---------------|------------|
|   | _ to meet     | $\rightarrow$ | met         |  | _ to spin  | $\rightarrow$ | spun       |
|   | _ to sing     | $\rightarrow$ | sang        |  | _ to feed  | $\rightarrow$ | fed        |
|   | _ to ring     | $\rightarrow$ | rang        |  | _ to fight | $\rightarrow$ | fought     |
|   | _ to throw    | $\rightarrow$ | threw       |  | _ to light | $\rightarrow$ | lit        |
|   | _ to run      | $\rightarrow$ | ran         |  | _ to eat   | $\rightarrow$ | ate        |
|   | _ to get      | $\rightarrow$ | got         |  | _ to fit   | $\rightarrow$ | fit        |
|   | _ to know     | $\rightarrow$ | knew        |  | _ to read  | $\rightarrow$ | read       |
|   | _ to sell     | $\rightarrow$ | sold        |  |            |               |            |
|   | _ fire _      |               |             | Monday   |            | _ Sı          | unday      |
|   | _ too _       |               |             | Tuesday  |            | _ W           | ednesday   |
|   | _ ice _       |               |             | concert  |            | _ Th          | nursday    |
|   | _ Friday _    |               |             | phone  |            | _ e\          | ening/     |
|   | _ crime _     |               |             | middle   |            | _ Sa          | aturday    |
|   | _ paper _     |               |             | guilty   |            | _ ic          | ing        |
|   | _ noisy _     |               |             | raise (n)  |            | _ lic         | quor store |
|   | _ parrot _    |               |             | _ out of control   |            |               |            |
|   | _ power fai   | lure          |             |  |            |               |            |

Rewrite the following sentences in the simple past tense using the irregular past tense form of the verb in parentheses.

| 1.  | She (to sing) on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday at the concert in Montreal.      |
|-----|---|
| 2.  | The house was dark because of the power failure, so we (to light) the candles.  |
| 3.  | The car (to spin) out of control on the ice.                                    |
| 4.  | I (to read) the newspaper in the evening on Saturday and Sunday.                |
| 5.  | My son (to fight) at school on Tuesday and Thursday last week.                  |
| 6.  | The phone (to ring) in the middle of the night.                                 |
| 7.  | I (to know) that he was guilty of the crime.                                    |
| 8.  | She (to meet) Sara at the liquor store.   |
| 9.  | Sorry, but I (to eat) all the icing on your cake when you went to the bathroom. |
| 10. | I (to get) a big raise at work last month                                       |
| 11. | We (to sell) our parrot because he was too noisy.                               |
| 12. | Alexandre (to throw) the papers in the fire.                                    |
| 13. | My pants (to fit) me last year.   |
| 14. | Carmen (to run) and hid under the bed.  |
| 15. | We (to feed) meat to the fox.   |
|     |   |
|     |   |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| to swim     | $\rightarrow$ | swam | <br>to write | $\rightarrow$ | wrote |
|-------------|---------------|------|--------------|---------------|-------|
| <br>to say  | $\rightarrow$ | said | <br>to sweep | $\rightarrow$ | swept |
| <br>to tell | $\rightarrow$ | told | <br>to stand | $\rightarrow$ | stood |
| <br>to hit  | $\rightarrow$ | hit  | <br>to deal  | $\rightarrow$ | dealt |

|     | to stic   | :k → stu            | ck                           | to make →             | made                |
|-----|---|---------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
|     | to lead   | $d \rightarrow led$ |                              | to quit →             | quit                |
|     | to fly  | → flev              | W                            | to become             | → became            |
|     | to we   | ep → we             | pt                           |                       |                     |
|     | sidew   | alk                 | glue                         |                       | _ chalk             |
|     | dentu   | res                 | dolphin                      |                       | _ piece             |
|     | wall  |                     | issue (n)                    |                       | _ blackboard        |
|     | date  |                     | truth                        |                       | drink (n)           |
|     | snowr   | man                 | stream                       |                       | housecoat           |
|     | minut   | e                   | princess                     |                       | on vacation         |
|     | corne   | r                   | jury                         |                       |                     |
|     | plete the following sen<br>ated in parentheses. | ntences in the      | simple past tense using t    | he irregular past ter | se form of the verb |
| 1.  | He  | (to deal)           | with many issues at w        | ork yesterday.        |                     |
| 2.  | I thought you                                   |                     | $_{-}$ (to say) it was free. |                       |                     |
| 3.  | Liliane   | (to sv              | veep) the sidewalk wi        | th her new broom      | 1.                  |
| 4.  | The kindergarten                                | class               | (to make) a                  | a snowman this m      | orning.             |
| 5.  | 1   | (to stick) th       | e pieces of wood toge        | ether with glue.      |                     |
| 6.  | I   | (to hit) my         | head on the wall whe         | n I fell down the s   | tairs.              |
| 7.  | My father                                       | (to                 | become) angry when           | n I                   | (to quit) school    |
|     | last year.                                      |                     |                              |                       |                     |
| 8.  | My grandmother .                                |                     | (to wear) her dei            | ntures for her date   | e with Mr. Olsen.   |
| 9.  | I   | (to lead) m         | y horse to the stream        | for a drink of cold   | water.              |
| 10. | We  | (to fly) th         | ne kite in the field all o   | day.                  |                     |
| 11. | The teacher                                     |                     | (to write) on the black      | kboard with pink      | chalk.              |
| 12. | Emy and Meghan                                  |                     | (to swim) with c             | dolphins when the     | ey were on vacation |
|     | in Florida.                                     |                     |                              |                       |                     |
| 13. | The princess                                    |                     | (to weep) alone in he        | er room.              |                     |
| 14. | She says that she                               |                     | (to tell) the truth          | n to the jury.        |                     |
| 15. | I   | (to stand) o        | on the corner in the ra      | in and waited for     | you for twenty      |
|     | minutes.  |                     |                              |                       |                     |
| 16. | He  | (to give)           | me a housecoat and a         | a puppy for my bii    | rthday.             |

## The Simple Past Tense: Negative Form



Place *did not* after the subject and use the simple form of the verb to create the negative form of the simple past tense for regular and irregular verbs.

| I did not    | $\rightarrow$ | I did not break    | $\rightarrow$ | I did not break the cup.   |
|--------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| you did not  | $\rightarrow$ | you did not answer | $\rightarrow$ | You did not answer me.     |
| he did not   | $\rightarrow$ | he did not believe | $\rightarrow$ | He did not believe you.    |
| she did not  | $\rightarrow$ | she did not pass   | $\rightarrow$ | She did not pass her test. |
| it did not   | $\rightarrow$ | it did not jump    | $\rightarrow$ | It did not jump on me.     |
| we did not   | $\rightarrow$ | we did not sell    | $\rightarrow$ | We did not sell our house. |
| they did not | $\rightarrow$ | they did not touch | $\rightarrow$ | They did not touch it.     |

The negative form of the simple past tense can also be expressed with the contraction *didn't*.

I did not boil → I didn't boil → I didn't boil the eggs. you did not build → you didn't build → You didn't build your house. he did not want → he didn't want → He didn't want coffee. she did not do → she didn't do → She didn't do her homework. it did not cost → it didn't cost → It didn't cost a lot. → We didn't sign it. we did not sign  $\rightarrow$  we didn't sign they did not find → they didn't find → They didn't find their cat.

EXERCISE 20.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>to shave | to apologize |        |
|--------------|--------------|--------|
| <br>to waste | to report    |        |
| <br>bottle   | medicine     | clam   |
| <br>screen   | valuablei    | income |
| skin         | mussels      |        |

Rewrite the following sentences to express the negative form of the simple past tense. Write the sentence once using did not and once using the contraction didn't.

| 1.  | They watched the hockey game on   | their new big-screen TV |            |
|-----|---|-------------------------|------------|
|     | , , , , ,   | J                       |            |
| 2.  | I forgot to tell him.   |                         |            |
|     |   |                         |            |
| 3.  | She wasted my valuable time   |                         |            |
|     |   |                         |            |
| 4.  | Marcia reported her income.   |                         |            |
| 5.  | I shook the bottle of medicine  |                         |            |
| _   | Marriago aborrad his bood   |                         |            |
| 0.  | My uncle shaved his head.   |                         |            |
| 7.  | He apologized to his friend.  |                         |            |
|     |   |                         |            |
| 8.  | We found clams and mussels in the   | sand on the beach.      |            |
|     |   |                         |            |
| 9.  | The police read the man his rights.                                       |                         |            |
|     |   |                         |            |
| 10. | It scratched my skin  |                         |            |
|     |   |                         |            |
|     |   |                         |            |
|     | •   |                         |            |
|     | XERCISE 20.2  |                         |            |
|     | Use your dictionary to find the needed for this exercise before provided. |                         |            |
|     | to translate  | to prevent              | to last    |
|     | to deposit  | to express              | to save    |
|     | to gain   | to brush                |            |
|     | inch  | opinion                 | litter box |

\_\_\_\_\_ wallet

\_\_\_\_\_ mitten \_\_\_\_\_ grandson

|                 | hat  | antenna                           | leftovers                              |
|-----------------|--|-----------------------------------|--|
|                 | shower                                     | pipe                              | pantyhose                              |
|                 | upstairs                                   | Greece                            | horoscope                              |
|                 | pay  | plumber                           | granddaughter                          |
|                 | trip                                       | savings account                   |  |
| Rewri<br>the ve | ite the following sentences in the negerb. | gative form using the contraction | n <b>didn't</b> and the simple form of |
| 1.              | He prevented the accident                  |                                   |  |
| 2.              | She expressed her opinion                  |                                   |  |
| 3.              | The movie lasted three hours.              |                                   |  |
| 4.              | They went to see their grandda             | aughter and grandson              |  |
| 5.              | They saved a lot of money for              | their trip to Greece              |  |
| 6.              | Patricia lost her mittens, scarf,          | and hat at school                 |  |
| 7.              | Sonia translated the letter                |                                   |  |
| 8.              | I bought a gift for her                    |                                   |  |
| 9.              | Mario found a black leather wa             | ıllet in the snow.                |  |
| 10.             | We put the leftovers in plastic            | bags                              |  |
| 11.             | I tore my pantyhose.                       |                                   |  |
| 12.             | I knew you were there                      |                                   |  |
| 13.             | He deposited his pay in his sav            | ings account                      |  |
| 14.             | The plumber fixed the pipes, sl            | hower, and toilet in the bath     | room upstairs                          |
| 15.             | I cleaned the litter box and bru           | ished the cat this morning        |  |
| 16              | I read my horoscope today                  |                                   |  |
| 10.             |  |                                   |  |
| 17.             | The wind bent the antenna. $\_$            |                                   |  |



### The Simple Past Tense: Question Form

Place *did* before the subject to create questions in the simple past tense. The simple form of the verb is always used when creating questions in the simple past tense with regular and irregular verbs.

I ate  $\rightarrow$  did I eat  $\rightarrow$  Did I eat your sandwich? you ate  $\rightarrow$  did you eat  $\rightarrow$  Did you eat my last cookie? he ate  $\rightarrow$  did he eat  $\rightarrow$  Did he eat his dessert? she ate  $\rightarrow$  did she eat  $\rightarrow$  Did she eat the vegetables? it ate  $\rightarrow$  did it eat  $\rightarrow$  Did it eat the egg? we ate  $\rightarrow$  did we eat  $\rightarrow$  Did we eat everything? they ate  $\rightarrow$  did they eat  $\rightarrow$  Did they eat the meat?

21·1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>to weigh       | to cheat    | to change |
|--------------------|-------------|-----------|
| <br>to elect       | to offend   | to remain |
| to escape          | to indicate |           |
| <br>cards          | prison      | argument  |
| salad              | peanut      | overtime  |
| <br>deer           | scale       | squirrel  |
| <br>garlic         | mind        | rainbow   |
| <br>fight          | starfish    | timesheet |
| <br>remote control |             |           |

Rewrite the following sentences to create questions in the simple past tense by placing **did** before the subject and using the simple form of the verb. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer.

- 1. You saw the beautiful rainbow.
- 2. He offended you when he said that. \_\_\_\_\_

| 3.  | Jessica found a starfish on the beach.         |  |   |  |  |  |
|-----|--|--|---|--|--|--|
| 4.  | The squirrel ate the peanuts.                  |  |   |  |  |  |
| 5.  | He shot a deer last weekend.                   |  |   |  |  |  |
| 6.  | I indicated my overtime hours on my timesheet. |  |   |  |  |  |
| 7.  | They remained friends after th                 | ne argument  |   |  |  |  |
| 8.  | Luke broke the remote contro                   | ol for the TV.   |   |  |  |  |
| 9.  | She changed her mind                           |  |   |  |  |  |
| 10. | Brandon cheated when we pla                    | ayed cards   |   |  |  |  |
| 11. | They weighed the fish on the                   | scale.   |   |  |  |  |
| 12. | You put garlic in the salad. $\_$              |  |   |  |  |  |
| 13. | The people elected a new pre                   | sident.  |   |  |  |  |
| 14. | He escaped from prison                         |  |   |  |  |  |
| 15. | It slept under your bed                        |  |   |  |  |  |
|     | provided.<br>to load                           | before you begin. Write the words in the wor |   |  |  |  |
|     | to lock  | to attend  | to climb                                    |  |  |  |
|     | to pick  | to convince  |   |  |  |  |
|     | sunset   | diver  |   |  |  |  |
|     | comb   |  | roller-coaster                              |  |  |  |
|     |  | seafood  | roller-coaster earring                      |  |  |  |
|     |  |  |   |  |  |  |
|     | arm  | maid   | earring                                     |  |  |  |
|     | arm<br>apron                                   | maid<br>tree   | earring<br>chipmunk                         |  |  |  |
|     | arm<br>apron<br>true                           | maid<br>tree<br>bubble   | earring chipmunk ice-cream cone             |  |  |  |
|     | arm apron true thief                           | maid<br>tree<br>bubble   | earring chipmunk ice-cream cone rattlesnake |  |  |  |

| 3.  | They attended the funeral.               |
|-----|--|
| 4.  | Barry ordered seafood.                   |
| 5.  | The chipmunk climbed the tree.           |
| 6.  | They rode the roller-coaster.            |
| 7.  | She made the earrings.                   |
| 8.  | The divers found a treasure chest.       |
| 9.  | The baby blew bubbles in the bath.       |
| 10. | They loaded the wagon                    |
| 11. | The rattlesnake bit his arm.             |
| 12. | The policeman put handcuffs on the thief |
| 13. | She convinced you.                       |
| 14. | You picked a flower for me               |
| 15. | It appeared to be true                   |
| 16. | You asked a question.                    |
| 17. | The maid ironed my apron                 |
| 18. | The dog licked my ice-cream cone.        |
| 19. | She drew a picture of a mermaid.         |
| 20. | Ravi lost his comb.                      |

### Prepositions: In and On



Use *in* as a preposition to indicate:

the position or location

The towels are in the dryer.

the months and seasons

My flower garden is beautiful in the summer.

location within countries, cities, states, and provinces

She goes to school <u>in Montreal</u>.

He lives in Ohio.

We had fun in Mexico.

He left in the afternoon.

(exception: at night)

the year of occurrence

We married in 2003.

points of the day

I met him in British Columbia.

Use *on* as a preposition to indicate:

an object supported by a top surface

The cup is on the table.

a time of occurrence

I worked on the weekend.

the directional position of something

It's the first door on the left.

a method of transportation

I felt sick on the plane. (exception: in the car)

the means of expression

We talked on the phone for two hours.

the subject of study

I have a good book on horses.



Rewrite the following sentences correctly by choosing **in** or **on**.

- 1. The garbage can is (in, on) the garage.
- 2. Do you see signs of life (in, on) the moon?
- 3. We will talk about it (in, on) the morning.
- 4. Mark moved here (in, on) 1997.
- 5. Don't throw your empty bottle (in, on) the ground.
- 6. We spent five days (in, on) Paris.

| 7.  | All the kids start school (in, on) Septen                              | nber                   |        |  |  |  |
|-----|--|------------------------|--------|--|--|--|
|     | I will see you (in, on) Saturday.                                      |                        |        |  |  |  |
|     |  |                        |        |  |  |  |
|     |  |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 10. | What do you have (in, on) your mouth                                   | ?                      |        |  |  |  |
| 11. | I saw your picture (in, on) the newspap                                | per (in, on) Ontario.  |        |  |  |  |
|     |  |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 12. | It's my birthday (in, on) Tuesday.                                     |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 13. | The bathroom is (in, on) the left.                                     |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 14. | We went for a ride (in, on) his motorcy                                | cle (in, on) the count | ry     |  |  |  |
|     |  |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 15. | She presented her project (in, on) trees                               | 5                      |        |  |  |  |
|     |  |                        |        |  |  |  |
|     |  |                        |        |  |  |  |
| E   | XERCISE  |                        |        |  |  |  |
| ~   | 22.2   |                        |        |  |  |  |
|     | Use your dictionary to find the me exercise before you begin. Write th | _                      | •      |  |  |  |
|     | , -  | ,                      |        |  |  |  |
|     | economy  | eyelash                | lid    |  |  |  |
|     | blister  | filling                | switch |  |  |  |
|     | wart   | affairs                |        |  |  |  |
| Com | plete the following sentences with <b>in</b> or <b>on</b> .            |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 1.  | They saw you TV last night.  |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 2.  | My aunt died August.   |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 3.  | She lives the city.  |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 4.  | I wrote an article whales.   |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 5.  | The people are the ship.   |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 6.  | We skate the winter.   |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 7.  | She has a wart her nose.   |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 8.  | We slept the bus.  |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 9.  | They divorced 2001.  |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 10. | Turn the switch the left.  |                        |        |  |  |  |
| 11. | Put the tablecloth the table.  |                        |        |  |  |  |

12. It's garbage day \_\_\_\_\_ Thursday.

| 13. | Do you live Michigan?                 |
|-----|---------------------------------------|
| 14. | He became the president 2005.         |
| 15. | Your breakfast is the tray.           |
| 16. | I have a little eyelash my eye.       |
| 17. | The answer is the book.               |
| 18. | I want to change the carpet my room.  |
| 19. | The twins were born Alberta.          |
| 20. | We will buy a new car the spring.     |
| 21. | The flashlight is the fridge.         |
| 22. | We like to walk the evening.          |
| 23. | Who is the man your right?            |
| 24. | I have a filling my back tooth.       |
| 25. | Put the lid the jar.                  |
| 26. | It is the best hotel the world.       |
| 27. | She gave a presentation the economy.  |
| 28. | We arrived the morning.               |
| 29. | I have a blister my toe.              |
| 30. | They work the United States.          |
| 31. | We have a day off Monday.             |
| 32. | His report was world affairs.         |
| 33. | Look at all the snow the roof.        |
| 34. | She screamed the middle of the night. |
| 35. | The fly is the ceiling.               |
| 36. | She lives Washington.                 |
| 37. | Paul wasn't with me Wednesday.        |
| 38. | I had lunch the train.                |
| 39. | Celine will have her baby January.    |
| 40. | We bought our house 1995.             |



## There Is and There Are: Present Tense

Use *there is* and *there are* to show that something exists. Use *there is* with singular nouns and *there are* with plural nouns.

#### Singular

There is a gift for you on the table.

There is a sand castle on the beach.

There is a dove on the fence.  $\rightarrow$  There is a button on the floor.  $\rightarrow$ 

#### Plural

- → There are two gifts for you on the table.
- → There are a lot of sand castles on the beach.
- → There are many doves on the fence.
- → There are three buttons on the floor.

23·1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| colt        | meatball     | quilt    |
|-------------|--------------|----------|
| sink        | gigantic     | piglet   |
| rock        | peppers      | stallion |
| street      | seagull      | sauce    |
| caterpillar | fire hydrant |          |
| whiteboard  | phone book   |          |

Rewrite the following sentences by choosing **there is** or **there are** depending on whether the noun is singular or plural.

- (There is, There are) many meatballs and red peppers in the sauce.
   (There is, There are) a whiteboard in my classroom.
- 3. (There is, There are) rocks in my boot.

| 4.  | (There is, There are) a phone book on her desk.                  |
|-----|--|
| 5.  | (There is, There are) gigantic footprints in the snow.           |
| 6.  | (There is, There are) a fire hydrant at the corner of my street. |
| 7.  | (There is, There are) many caterpillars on the tree.             |
| 8.  | (There is, There are) a black stallion in the field.             |
| 9.  | (There is, There are) four piglets and three colts in the barn.  |
| 10. | (There is, There are) a quilt on my bed.                         |
| 11. | (There is, There are) many seagulls on the beach.                |
| 12. | (There is, There are) a new keyboard in the box.                 |
| 13. | (There is, There are) two sponges in the bucket.                 |
| 14. | (There is, There are) many dirty plates in the sink.             |
| 15. | (There is, There are) six diamonds on my ring.                   |
| 16. | (There is, There are) a few gray squirrels in the tree.          |
|     |  |

| EXERCISE |  |
|----------|--|
| 23.2     |  |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| tow truck  | <br>proof   | <br>pen                |
|------------|-------------|------------------------|
| airport    | <br>near    | <br>downtown           |
| shoulder   | <br>cave    | <br>tablespoon         |
| dressing   | <br>bat     | <br>over there         |
| beehive    | <br>check   | <br>polka dot          |
| ear        | <br>gun     | <br>several            |
| oil        | <br>muffin  | <br>long-distance call |
| sugar      | <br>snack   | <br>reward             |
| paper clip | <br>bullet  | <br>teaspoon           |
| toothpick  | <br>wrinkle | <br>forehead           |
| chin       | <br>dustpan | <br>freckle            |
| mosquito   | <br>raisin  | <br>fire extinguisher  |
|            |             |                        |

Complete the following sentences with is or are depending on whether the noun directly following the verb is singular or plural.

- 1. There \_\_\_\_\_ many stars in the sky.
- 2. There \_\_\_\_\_ a beehive in the garage.
- 3. There \_\_\_\_\_ enough proof.
- 4. There \_\_\_\_\_ a big roller-coaster over there.
- 5. There \_\_\_\_\_ several tow trucks downtown.
- 6. There \_\_\_\_\_ a small airport outside the city.
- 7. There \_\_\_\_\_ a check for you in the mail.
- 8. There \_\_\_\_\_ a teaspoon of sugar in my tea.
- 9. There \_\_\_\_\_ many bats in the cave.
- 10. There \_\_\_\_\_ a box of paper clips in the drawer.
- 11. There \_\_\_\_\_ bullets in the gun.
- 12. There \_\_\_\_\_ a dustpan in the closet.
- 13. There \_\_\_\_\_ spaghetti sauce on your chin.
- 14. There \_\_\_\_\_ many wrinkles on your forehead.
- 15. There \_\_\_\_\_ a parking lot at the corner.
- 16. There \_\_\_\_\_ a long-distance call for you.

| 17. | There | three freckles on my nose.                    |
|-----|-------|---|
| 18. | There | a fire extinguisher in the kitchen.           |
| 19. | There | hunters in the woods.                         |
| 20. | There | a dog pen in the backyard.                    |
| 21. | There | snacks for everybody.                         |
| 22. | There | a big reward for you.                         |
| 23. | There | pink polka dots on my dress.                  |
| 24. | There | a hardware store near the mall.               |
| 25. | There | many raisins in my muffin.                    |
| 26. | There | a mosquito on your shoulder.                  |
| 27. | There | a scar on my knee.                            |
| 28. | There | two tablespoons of oil in the salad dressing. |
| 29. | There | a gold earring in his left ear.               |
| 30. | There | a lot of toothpicks in the jar.               |



# There Is and There Are: Present Tense: Negative Form

| Place <i>not</i> after <i>there is</i> and <i>there are</i> to cr | reate a negative sentence. |
|---|----------------------------|
|---|----------------------------|

- there is  $\rightarrow$  there is not  $\rightarrow$  There is not a rocking chair downstairs.
- there are  $\rightarrow$  there are not  $\rightarrow$  There are not many blankets on my bed.

The negative form of *there is* and *there are* can also be expressed with the contractions *there isn't* and *there aren't*.

- there is not  $\rightarrow$  there isn't  $\rightarrow$  There isn't a bug in the house. there are not  $\rightarrow$  there aren't  $\rightarrow$  There aren't many leftovers.
- 24.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

 folder
 rabbit
 cage

 shade
 tricycle
 quarter

 log
 penny
 scarecrov

 button
 dime
 angel

 turtle
 thermometer

 nickel
 wishing well

Rewrite the following sentences to express the negative form of **there is** and **there are**. Write the sentence once using **is not** or **are not** and once using the contraction **isn't** or **aren't**.

- 1. There is a lot of shade in the backyard. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. There are three gold buttons on my coat. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. There are two yellow folders on my desk. \_\_\_\_\_

| 4. | There is a tricycle on the sidewalk     |   |           |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|-----------|--|--|--|
| 5. | There is a thermometer in the bathroom. |   |           |  |  |  |
| 6. | There are three white rabbits in the c  |   |           |  |  |  |
| 7. | There is a turtle on the log            |   |           |  |  |  |
| 8. | There are many angels in the picture    |   |           |  |  |  |
| 9. | There is a scarecrow in the field       |   |           |  |  |  |
| 0. | There are many dimes and nickels in     | the wishing well  |           |  |  |  |
| 1. | There are five quarters and a penny i   | n my back pocket  |           |  |  |  |
|    |   |   |           |  |  |  |
|    |   |   |           |  |  |  |
| ΕΣ | KERCISE                                 |   |           |  |  |  |
| 2  | Use your dictionary to find the n       | neaning of the new vocabulary word<br>the words in your language in the s |           |  |  |  |
|    | yearbook                                | wrist   | dip       |  |  |  |
|    | alarm clock                             | hollow  | bracelet  |  |  |  |
|    | wall                                    | woodpecker  | pay phone |  |  |  |
|    | ferry                                   | face  | passenger |  |  |  |
|    | region                                  | cemetery  | lock      |  |  |  |
|    | phone booth                             | grasshopper   | ice cube  |  |  |  |
|    | knot                                    | flour   | sandbox   |  |  |  |
|    | rubber                                  | rag   | cushion   |  |  |  |
|    | satin                                   | dresser   | hole      |  |  |  |
|    | flight                                  | church  | across    |  |  |  |
|    | tiny                                    | valley  | price tag |  |  |  |
|    | theater                                 | row   | dirt      |  |  |  |

 $_{-}$  butterfly

\_\_\_\_ feather

\_\_\_ oar

Use the contraction **isn't** or **aren't** to complete the following negative sentences.

1. There \_\_\_\_\_ enough time. 2. There \_\_\_\_\_ a pay phone in my school. 3. There \_\_\_\_\_ many grasshoppers in the valley. 4. There \_\_\_\_\_ a phone booth at the corner. 5. There \_\_\_\_\_ several chairs in the basement. 6. There \_\_\_\_\_ a lock on the door. 7. There \_\_\_\_\_ a skunk in the hollow log. 8. There \_\_\_\_\_ a cemetery in my town. 9. There \_\_\_\_\_ many ice cubes in my drink. 10. There \_\_\_\_\_ a sandbox in the park. 11. There \_\_\_\_\_ a hole in my pocket. 12. There \_\_\_\_\_ many rags in the bucket. 13. There \_\_\_\_\_ a satin cushion on the floor. 14. There \_\_\_\_\_ two alarm clocks on my dresser. 15. There \_\_\_\_\_ a butterfly on the flower. 16. There \_\_\_\_\_ enough noodles in my soup. 17. There \_\_\_\_\_ a tiny spider on the wall. 18. There \_\_\_\_\_ many rows in the theater. 19. There \_\_\_\_\_ dirt on my face. 20. There \_\_\_\_\_ a knot in the gold necklace. 21. There \_\_\_\_\_ a price tag on the sweater. 22. There \_\_\_\_\_ many passengers on this flight. 23. There \_\_\_\_\_ enough flour for this recipe. 24. There \_\_\_\_\_ many woodpeckers in my region. 25. There \_\_\_\_\_ enough dip for the vegetables. 26. There \_\_\_\_\_ many cars on the ferry. 27. There \_\_\_\_\_ a bracelet on her wrist. 28. There \_\_\_\_\_ a church across the street. 29. There \_\_\_\_\_ many feathers in the pillow. 30. There \_\_\_\_\_ a picture of you in my yearbook.

31. There \_\_\_\_\_ oars in the rubber boat.

# There Is and There Are: Present Tense: Question Form



Place *is* or *are* before *there* to create questions in the present tense.

| there is  | $\rightarrow$ | is there  | $\rightarrow$ | Is there a kitten outside?   |
|-----------|---------------|-----------|---------------|------------------------------|
| there are | $\rightarrow$ | are there | $\rightarrow$ | Are there ducks in the pond? |

|    | EXERCISE      |  |
|----|---------------|--|
| _4 | 25.1          |  |
|    | <b>C</b> 3.17 |  |
|    |               |  |
|    |               |  |
|    |               |  |
|    |               |  |
|    |               |  |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

\_\_\_\_\_ handle \_\_\_\_\_ place mat

|    |               | alien   | catfish  |                     | lifeguard   |
|----|---------------|---|----------|---------------------|-------------|
|    |               | germ  | suitcase |                     | life jacket |
|    |               | ruler   | UFO      |                     | candy cane  |
|    |               | vending machine   |          | skyscraper          |             |
|    |               | measuring cup   |          | diving board        |             |
|    |               | ng sentences to create question<br>ude a question mark (?) in you |          | is or are before th | ere.        |
| 1. | There is a v  | ending machine in the ca  | feteria  |                     |             |
| 2. |               | nough life jackets in the b                                       | ooat     |                     |             |
| 3. | There are n   | nany skyscrapers in the cit                                       | у        |                     |             |
| 4. | There is a li | feguard at the pool   |          |                     |             |
| 5. | There are to  | wo owls in the tree   |          |                     |             |
| 6. | There is a d  | living board at the public  | pool     |                     |             |
|    |               |   |          |                     |             |
| 7. | There are q   | erms on my hands  |          |                     |             |

| 8.  | There is a handle on my suitcase.            |
|-----|--|
| 9.  | There is a UFO in the sky.                   |
| 10. | There are aliens in the UFO.                 |
| 11. | There are candy canes on the Christmas tree. |
|     |  |
| 12. | There is a ruler on my desk.                 |
| 13. | There are enough place mats on the table.    |
| 14. | There is a measuring cup in the cupboard.    |
| 15. | There is a catfish in the pail.              |
| 16. | There are many hangers in the closet.        |
| 17. | There is a mirror in your purse.             |
|     |  |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>fishing rod  | <br>blister     | <br>jail        |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <br>neighborhood | <br>spinach     | <br>walnut      |
| <br>spare        | <br>fingerprint | <br>pushpin     |
| <br>corkscrew    | <br>heel        | <br>can opener  |
| <br>playroom     | <br>rooster     | <br>trunk       |
| <br>hitchhiker   | <br>kennel      | <br>butcher     |
| <br>blood        | <br>flyswatter  | <br>elevator    |
| <br>porcupine    | <br>stew        | <br>rolling pin |
| <br>pool table   | <br>marble      | <br>tire        |
| traffic light    |                 |                 |

Complete the following questions with is or are depending on whether the noun directly referring to the verb is singular or plural.

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_ there fingerprints on the gun?
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ there a pool table in the playroom?
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ there a porcupine in the yard?
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_ there many marbles in the jar?
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_ there a rolling pin in the drawer?

| 6  | there a rooster on your farm?             |
|----|---|
| 7  | there many traffic lights in the city?    |
| 8  | there a hitchhiker on the road?           |
| 9  | there a spare tire in the trunk?          |
| 10 | there two blisters on my heel?            |
| 11 | there many fishing rods in the boat?      |
| 12 | there enough marshmallows for me?         |
| 13 | there a mouse in the house?               |
| 14 | there blood on your shirt?                |
| 15 | there three elevators in this building?   |
| 16 | there a lot of dandelions in the yard?    |
| 17 | there a fireman at the door?              |
| 18 | there a can opener on the counter?        |
| 19 | there meatballs in the stew?              |
| 20 | there a pushpin on the floor?             |
| 21 | there clean socks in the drawer?          |
| 22 | there many dogs in the kennel?            |
| 23 | there a corkscrew in the drawer?          |
| 24 | there many parking lots in Montreal?      |
| 25 | there a phone book in the phone booth?    |
| 26 | there walnuts in the spinach salad?       |
| 27 | there a jail in your neighborhood?        |
| 28 | there icing on the cake?                  |
| 29 | there a fire hydrant near your house?     |
| 30 | there enough plates for everybody?        |
| 31 | there baby squirrels in the nest?         |
| 32 | there a flyswatter in the kitchen?        |
| 33 | there a broom in the garage?              |
| 34 | there are many good butchers in the city? |
|    |   |



## There Is and There Are: Past Tense

The past tense of the singular *there is* is *there was*, and the past tense of the plural *there are* is *there were*. Use *there was* and *there were* to show that something existed in the past.

there is  $\rightarrow$  there was  $\rightarrow$  There was a loud noise downstairs last night. there are  $\rightarrow$  there were  $\rightarrow$  There were dark clouds in the sky.

26.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

circle gravy stray

west alley triangle

rust east fireworks

straw wet CD player

square cork hurricane

south north belly button

magnifying glass mashed potatoes

Rewrite the following past tense sentences by choosing **was** or **were** depending on whether the noun directly following the verb is singular or plural.

- 1. There (was, were) rust on the knife.
- 2. There (was, were) rules to follow.
- 3. There (was, were) a big sale at the mall, so I bought a scarf and shoes.
- 4. There (was, were) a CD player in my car, but someone stole it.

The contract of the project in the contract of the contract of

| 5.  | There (was, were) wet towels on the floor after he took his shower.              |
|-----|--|
| 6.  | There (was, were) a hurricane in the southeast last week.                        |
| 7.  | There (was, were) many stray cats in the alley.                                  |
| 8.  | There (was, were) beautiful fireworks in the sky last night.                     |
| 9.  | There (was, were) a magnifying glass on the table.                               |
| 10. | There (was, were) two circles, three squares, and four triangles in the picture. |
| 11. | There (was, were) a diamond in her belly button.                                 |
| 12. | There (was, were) a cork in the bottle of wine.                                  |
| 13. | There (was, were) many straws in the cup on the counter in the kitchen.          |
| 4.  | There (was, were) a good story about you in the newspaper this morning.          |
| 5.  | There (was, were) a lot of dirty pots and pans in the sink.                      |
| 16. | There (was, were) many dimes, nickels, and quarters in my piggy bank.            |
| ١7. | There (was, were) gravy on my mashed potatoes but not on my meat.                |
| 18. | There (was, were) a snowstorm in the northwest last night.                       |
|     |  |

| EXERCISE |
|----------|
| 26.2     |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>lily pad        | <br>cheek     | <br>flag         |
|---------------------|---------------|------------------|
| <br>commercial      | <br>reason    | <br>teabag       |
| <br>wax             | <br>spiderweb | <br>ladder       |
| <br>stranger        | <br>tear      | <br>clothespin   |
| <br>priest          | <br>teapot    | <br>pole         |
| <br>knitting needle | <br>dance     | <br>online       |
| <br>pear            | <br>windmill  | <br>decision     |
| <br>wooden          | <br>dew       | <br>Mother's Day |
| <br>calendar        | <br>France    | <br>guy          |
| in line             |               |                  |
|                     |               |                  |

Complete the following past tense sentences using **was** or **were** depending on whether the noun directly following the verb is singular or plural.

- 1. There \_\_\_\_\_ a new priest in my church today.
- 2. There \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of clothespins in the bag.
- 3. There \_\_\_\_\_ many houses for sale last year.
- 4. There \_\_\_\_\_ a spiderweb in my truck.
- 5. There \_\_\_\_\_ good reasons for his decision.
- 6. There \_\_\_\_\_ a wooden ladder in the garage.
- 7. There \_\_\_\_\_ many pears in the tree.
- 8. There \_\_\_\_\_ a flag on the pole.
- 9. There \_\_\_\_\_ three knitting needles in the basket.
- 10. There \_\_\_\_\_ a rainbow after the storm.
- 11. There \_\_\_\_\_ dew on the grass this morning.
- 12. There \_\_\_\_\_ a parade on Mother's Day.
- 13. There \_\_\_\_\_ many people online.
- 14. There \_\_\_\_\_ four rubber ducks in the bath.
- 15. There \_\_\_\_\_ a stranger at the door.
- 16. There \_\_\_\_\_ many tourists in France last year.
- 17. There \_\_\_\_\_ a calendar on my desk.
- 18. There \_\_\_\_\_ two teabags in the teapot.

| 19. | There | a car in the ditch.             |
|-----|-------|---------------------------------|
| 20. | There | tears on her cheek.             |
| 21. | There | frogs on the lily pads.         |
| 22. | There | a ghost in the attic.           |
| 23. | There | wax on the table.               |
| 24. | There | someone in the phone booth.     |
| 25. | There | a good commercial on TV.        |
| 26. | There | windmills in the field.         |
| 27. | There | a mosquito in the tent.         |
| 28. | There | many tall guys at the dance.    |
| 29. | There | only one waitress yesterday.    |
| 30. | There | many people in line.            |
| 31. | There | a lot of weeds in the garden.   |
| 32. | There | many accidents this morning.    |
| 33. | There | a power failure last night.     |
| 34. | There | a hockey game on TV last night. |



# There Is and There Are: Past Tense: Negative Form

| there<br>there                |  | there was not there were not   | <ul><li>→ There was not a doll on</li><li>→ There were not many k</li></ul> |                |
|-------------------------------|--|--|---|----------------|
|                               |  | there was and th<br>and there weren                                  | ere were can also be expr   | essed with th  |
|                               |  |  | <ul><li>→ There wasn't a bruise</li><li>→ There weren't many</li></ul>      |                |
| EXERCISE                      |  |  |   |                |
| 27.1                          | needed for t   | •  | meaning of the new vocabula<br>you begin. Write the words in y<br>i.        | •              |
|                               | wreath   | ı  | desert  | ga             |
|                               |  |  |   |                |
|                               | stone  |  | beaver  | ca             |
|                               |  |  |   |                |
|                               | dam  |  | crack   | ре             |
|                               | dam  |  | crack   | ре             |
|                               | dam<br>hall  |  | crack<br>shell  | ca<br>pe<br>he |
| Rewrite the foli              | dam hall bridge octopu   | us   | crack shell windshield  | pe he          |
| Rewrite the foliusing was not | dam hall bridge octopu lowing senter or were not               | us<br>nces to express the r<br>and once using the                    | crack shell windshield wheelchair   | nce once       |
| Rewrite the foliusing was not | dam hall bridge octopu lowing senter or were not vas a crack i | nces to express the rand once using the name on the name windshield. | crack shell windshield wheelchair negative form. Write the sente            | nce once       |

| 4.  | There was a peach in my lunch box.   |
|-----|--|
| 5.  | There were two staplers on my desk in my office.   |
| 6.  | There was a big brown beaver near the dam  |
| 7.  | There were many wheelchairs in the hall in the hospital.   |
| 8.  | There was a wreath on the door.  |
| 9.  | There were many camels in the desert.  |
| 10. | There was a huge octopus in the boat.  |
| 11. | There were many fun games to play.   |
|     |  |
| ЕΣ  | KERCISE  |
| 2   | Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided. |
|     | wicker shadow rope   |
|     | wiener wallpaper pickle  |
|     | zoo mouthwash polar bear   |

| wicker  | <br>shadow       | <br>rope              |
|---------|------------------|-----------------------|
| wiener  | <br>wallpaper    | <br>pickle            |
| Z00     | <br>mouthwash    | <br>polar bear        |
| breeze  | <br>hamburger    | <br>stuffing          |
| sign    | <br>poison ivy   | crumb                 |
| cool    | bank account     | <br>stripe            |
| plenty  | sheet of paper   | <br>crowd             |
| stable  | cinnamon         | <br>chapter           |
| ash     | <br>live concert | <br>glove compartment |
| gorilla | bus strike       | <br>forest            |
| cub     | traffic jam      | <br>tuna              |
| lock    | <br>hot dog bun  | <br>scrambled eggs    |
|         |                  |                       |

*Use the contraction* **wasn't** *or* **weren't** *to complete the following negative sentences.* 

| 1.  | There | a bottle of mouthwash on the shelf in the bathroom. |
|-----|-------|---|
| 2.  | There | many chapters in the book.                          |
| 3.  | There | a rope in the boat.                                 |
| 4.  | There | scrambled eggs for breakfast.                       |
| 5.  | There | wallpaper on the wall.                              |
| 6.  | There | a traffic jam on the highway.                       |
| 7.  | There | stripes on his shirt.                               |
| 8.  | There | a tuna sandwich for you.                            |
| 9.  | There | many signs on the road.                             |
| 10. | There | a shadow on the wall.                               |
| 11. | There | a map in the glove compartment.                     |
| 12. | There | many sheets of paper.                               |
| 13. | There | crumbs on the plate.                                |
| 14. | There | ink in the printer.                                 |
| 15. | There | enough pickles on my hamburger.                     |
| 16. | There | a bus strike in the city.                           |
| 17. | There | a lot of money in her bank account.                 |
| 18. | There | plenty of time.                                     |
| 19. | There | three polar bear cubs.                              |
| 20. | There | a teaspoon of cinnamon in the jar.                  |
| 21. | There | gorillas at the zoo.                                |
| 22. | There | many wicker chairs in the store.                    |
| 23. | There | enough wieners for the hot dog buns.                |
| 24. | There | ashes in the fireplace.                             |
| 25. | There | a big crowd outside.                                |
| 26. | There | stuffing in the turkey.                             |
| 27. | There | many horses in the stable.                          |
| 28. | There | a live concert on TV last night.                    |
| 29. | There | poison ivy in the forest.                           |
| 30. | There | a cool breeze last night.                           |
| 31. | There | a big ship in the lock.                             |
| 32. | There | hunters in the woods.                               |
|     |       |   |

## There Is and There Are: Past Tense: Question Form



Place was or were before there to create questions in the past tense.

- there was  $\rightarrow$  was there  $\rightarrow$  Was there a cushion on the chair?
- there were  $\rightarrow$  were there  $\rightarrow$  Were there enough snacks for the kids?

28·1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>splinter    |    | bone            | outhouse  |
|-----------------|----|-----------------|-----------|
| <br>rose        |    | skull           | entrance  |
| <br>rude        |    | dice            | fuzzy     |
| <br>thumb       |    | bow             | without   |
| <br>room        |    | thorn           | locksmith |
| <br>blind spot  |    | rearview mirror |           |
| garage sale     |    | cigarette butt  |           |
| <br>Canada goos | se |                 |           |

Rewrite the following sentences to create questions by placing **was** or **were** before **there**. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer.

- 1. There were many knights to guard the castle in the kingdom.
- 2. There was a wooden outhouse behind our cottage in the country.
- 3. There was a picture of a skull and bones on the bottle.
- 4. There were many cigarette butts in the ashtray.

| 5. | There was a car in my blind spot.                         |
|----|---|
| 6. | There were pink fuzzy dice on his rearview mirror.        |
| 7. | There was a splinter in his thumb.                        |
| 8. | There was enough room on the bus for everybody.           |
| 9. | There was a rude boy in your class last year.             |
| 0. | There were two pretty blue bows in her hair.              |
| 1. | There was a Canada goose near the lake.                   |
| 2. | There was a green carpet on the floor in the entrance.    |
| 3. | There was a lot of garlic in the butter.                  |
| 4. | There were many people without a passport at the airport. |
| 5. | There were many thorns on the rose.                       |
| 6. | There was a garage sale last weekend.                     |
| 7. | There were many people on the roller-coaster.             |
| 8. | There was a locksmith in the mall.                        |
|    |   |

| EXERCISE |  |
|----------|--|
| 28.2     |  |
|          |  |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| ocean    | <br>playpen    | <br>lane       |
|----------|----------------|----------------|
| walrus   | <br>playground | <br>ketchup    |
| tusk     | <br>anchor     | <br>penny      |
| blind    | <br>fly        | <br>Earth      |
| dime     | rusty          | <br>fog        |
| oatmeal  | <br>dinosaur   | <br>bus stop   |
| axe      | <br>dimple     | <br>pillowcase |
| olive    | <br>prize      | <br>cardboard  |
| password | <br>bench      | <br>raft       |
| factory  |                |                |

Complete the following past tense questions with was or were depending on whether the noun directly referring to the verb is singular or plural.

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_ there dinosaurs on Earth?
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ there a cardboard box in the bedroom?
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ there a lock on the door?
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_ there a manager in the restaurant?
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_ there a blind on the window?
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_ there a bench in the playground?
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_ there a rusty axe in the barn?
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_ there many pennies in the jar?
- 9. \_\_\_\_\_ there toys in the playpen for the baby?
- 10. \_\_\_\_\_ there a fly in the spiderweb?
- 11. \_\_\_\_\_ there a motorcycle in the parking lot?
- 12. \_\_\_\_\_ there a dime in your pocket?
- 13. \_\_\_\_\_ there two olives in your drink?
- 14. \_\_\_\_\_ there a pillowcase on the pillow?
- 15. \_\_\_\_\_ there a raft on the river?
- 16. \_\_\_\_\_ there stars in the sky that night?
- 17. \_\_\_\_\_ there enough hangers in the closet?
- 18. \_\_\_\_\_ there a prize for me?

| 19 | _ there many lanes on the highway?        |
|----|---|
| 20 | _ there a bus stop at the corner?         |
| 21 | _ there many workers in the factory?      |
| 22 | _ there a password on your computer?      |
| 23 | _ there fog on the lake?                  |
| 24 | _ there a broken tusk on the walrus?      |
| 25 | _ there a satellite dish in the yard?     |
| 26 | _ there cute dimples on her cheeks?       |
| 27 | _ there a silver earring in his left ear? |
| 28 | _ there a huge anchor on the beach?       |
| 29 | _ there many divers in the ocean?         |
| 30 | _ there ketchup in the recipe?            |
| 31 | _ there a hair dryer in your luggage?     |
| 32 | _ there a goldfish in the bowl?           |
| 33 | _ there oatmeal cookies in the oven?      |
| 34 | _ there tea in the teapot?                |

## Prepositions: To and At

Use to as a preposition to describe a movement or an action toward a person,

| place, or thing.   |  |
|--|--|
| I walk <u>to school</u> .  | She goes to the bank every week.   |
| Use <i>at</i> as a preposition to descrithing arrives at a location. | be an action performed when a person or  |
| We learn a lot at school.  | I hurt my knee at the playground.  |
| Use <i>at</i> as a preposition to refer to                           | time.  |
| We have a meeting at three o'cl                                      | lock. He eats breakfast at 7:30 A.M.   |
| Use your dictionary to find  | the meaning of the new vocabulary words<br>fore you begin. Write the words in your<br>vided. |
| daily  | opponent core  |
| muzzle   | bonfire England  |
| press  | Spain  |
| Rewrite the following sentences correctly b                          | y choosing <b>to</b> or <b>at</b> .  |
| 1. Please explain this (to, at) me. $_{-}$                           |  |
| 2. The girls ate cake (to, at) the bir                               | thday party  |
|  |  |

3. We saw Tony and his brother (to, at) the restaurant.

4. I sold my car (to, at) Mike.

5. I bought a muzzle for my dog (to, at) the pet store.

6. The funeral was (to, at) four o'clock.

| 7.       | We fed the apple cores (to, at) the                            | raccoons.             |                |
|----------|--|-----------------------|----------------|
| Ω        | I go (to, at) the gym daily.                                   |                       |                |
|          | We made a bonfire (to, at) the beau                            |                       |                |
|          | They drive (to, at) the city.                                  |                       |                |
|          |  |                       |                |
|          | The elevator went (to, at) the baser                           |                       |                |
| 12.      | We noticed that there was a police                             | man (to, at) the door |                |
| 13.      | He talked (to, at) the press after the                         | e meeting             |                |
| 14.      | They gave the prize (to, at) my opp                            | onent                 |                |
| 15.      | Call me (to, at) 6:30 P.M.                                     |                       |                |
| 16.      | We went (to, at) England and Spair                             | ı last year           |                |
|          |  |                       |                |
|          |  |                       |                |
| E        | XERCISE  |                       |                |
| <b>Y</b> | 29.2   |                       |                |
|          | Use your dictionary to find the exercise before you begin. Wri | _                     | •              |
|          | winner   | player                | detention      |
|          | dizzy  | cliff                 | Australia      |
|          | edge   | silk                  | one-way ticket |
|          | nearby   | loan                  | work of art    |
|          | auction  | shore                 | left-handed    |
|          | outfit   | emerald               | troublemaker   |
|          | race   | congratulations       |                |
| Comp     | plete the following sentences with <b>to</b> or <b>a</b>       | t.                    |                |
| 1.       | I forgot my homework my  | house.                |                |
| 2.       | They signed the contract th                                    | ne courthouse.        |                |
| 3.       | He sent a gift certificate his                                 | mother.               |                |
| 4.       | I felt dizzy school today.                                     |                       |                |
| 5.       | We met Bob the airport.  |                       |                |
| 6.       | Throw it me.   |                       |                |
| 7.       | The teacher sent the class troublen                            | naker the office.     |                |
| 8.       | Wait for me the bus stop.                                      |                       |                |

| 9.  | Meet me the mall one o'clock.                    |
|-----|--|
| 10. | He bought a one-way ticket Australia.            |
| 11. | We walked the edge of the cliff.                 |
| 12. | The kids jumped off the boat and swam the shore. |
| 13. | They stayed a nearby hotel.                      |
| 14. | Congratulations the winner.                      |
| 15. | I lent my silk pants Sylvie.                     |
| 16. | I think she is work.                             |
| 17. | Go bed.  |
| 18. | She had a detention school yesterday.            |
| 19. | Linda gave her pink sharpener me.                |
| 20. | My appointment is 3:30 P.M.                      |
| 21. | Talk me.   |
| 22. | They bought it the garage sale.                  |
| 23. | The teacher read a story the students.           |
| 24. | I gave the black glove the left-handed player.   |
| 25. | She forgot her sweater the day care.             |
| 26. | They went the bank for a loan.                   |
| 27. | I bought a work of art the auction.              |
| 28. | We lost a lot of money the horse race.           |
| 29. | She wore her white outfit the party last night.  |
| 30. | Mylene left her emerald ring my house.           |
| 31. | He returned his apartment.                       |
| 32. | Ronald studied McGill University.                |
| 33. | It starts six o'clock.                           |
| 34. | Happy birthday you!                              |



## The Present Progressive (Continuous) Tense

The present progressive is used to describe an activity that is presently in progress. It is formed using the verb *to be* and by adding *-ing* to the simple form of the verb.

| I drink    | $\rightarrow$ | I am drinking     | $\rightarrow$ | I am drinking my milk with a straw      |
|------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|---|
| you drink  | $\rightarrow$ | you are drinking  | $\rightarrow$ | You are drinking my wine.               |
| he drinks  | $\rightarrow$ | he is drinking    | $\rightarrow$ | He is drinking a cold beer.             |
| she drinks | $\rightarrow$ | she is drinking   | $\rightarrow$ | She is drinking a cup of tea.           |
| it drinks  | $\rightarrow$ | it is drinking    | $\rightarrow$ | It is drinking the water in the toilet. |
| we drink   | $\rightarrow$ | we are drinking   | $\rightarrow$ | We are drinking orange juice.           |
| they drink | $\rightarrow$ | they are drinking | $\rightarrow$ | They are drinking grape juice.          |

30·1

| <br>to sue     | <br>to cross   |          | to shiver |
|----------------|----------------|----------|-----------|
| <br>to pour    | <br>to howl    |          | to repair |
| to sew         | <br>to worry   |          | to growl  |
| <br>to bark    | <br>to discuss |          | to knit   |
|                |                |          |           |
| <br>wolf       | <br>hiccup     |          | canoe     |
| <br>mayor      | <br>pothole    |          | stadium   |
| <br>Big Dipper | Little Di      | oper     |           |
| <br>soft drink | stepfath       | er       |           |
| <br>enormous   | goose b        | ump      |           |
| <br>groundhog  | bulletpr       | oof vest |           |
| bleachers      | retireme       | ent home |           |

|     | Rewrite the following sentences in the present progressive tense. Use the correct form of the verb <b>to be</b> , and add <b>-ing</b> to the simple form of the verb in parentheses. |  |  |  |  |
|-----|--|--|--|--|--|
| 1.  | The wolf (to howl) at the moon.  |  |  |  |  |
| 2.  | Sheila (to worry) now because her daughter is late.  |  |  |  |  |
| 3.  | It is cold. We (to shiver) and we have goose bumps.  |  |  |  |  |
| 4.  | They (to cross) the lake in a canoe.   |  |  |  |  |
| 5.  | The mayor (to discuss) the enormous potholes on the roads.   |  |  |  |  |
| 6.  | She (to pour) a soft drink for you.  |  |  |  |  |
| 7.  | The nuns (to sew) clothes and (to knit) slippers for the children.   |  |  |  |  |
| 8.  | The policeman (to wear) his bulletproof vest.  |  |  |  |  |
| 9.  | My great-grandfather (to live) in a retirement home.   |  |  |  |  |
| 10. | They (to sue) the city.  |  |  |  |  |
| 11. | We (to look) at the Big Dipper and the Little Dipper with our binoculars   |  |  |  |  |
| 12. | Rollande (to drink) water because she has the hiccups.   |  |  |  |  |
| 13. | My stepfather (to repair) the bleachers in the stadium.  |  |  |  |  |
| 14. | It (to snow) again   |  |  |  |  |
| 15. | The dog (to bark) and (to growl) at the groundhog outside.   |  |  |  |  |
|     |  |  |  |  |  |

| _ |          |   |
|---|----------|---|
|   | EXERCISE |   |
| 1 | 20.0     | ١ |
| ļ | 30.7     |   |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space

| to overflow     | <br>to chew   | <br>to rub     |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| to juggle       | <br>to rattle | <br>to drool   |
| to wave         | <br>to tickle | <br>to rewind  |
| <br>to surround | <br>to tease  | <br>to deliver |
|                 |               |                |
| dentist         | <br>flyer     | <br>queen      |
| <br>high heels  | <br>poverty   | <br>postcard   |
| back            | <br>filling   | <br>godfather  |
| <br>law         | <br>ball      | <br>treat      |

Complete the following sentences to form the present progressive tense. Use the correct form of the verb to **be**, and add **-ing** to the simple form of the verb in parentheses.

- 1. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to dress) the baby in the bedroom.
- 2. You \_\_\_\_\_ (to cough) a lot.
- 3. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to tickle) me.
- 4. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ (to rewind) the movie.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (to wave) at the crowd. 5. The queen \_\_\_
- 6. He \_\_\_\_\_\_ (to rub) my back.
- 7. The baby \_\_\_\_\_ (to drool) again.
- 8. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit) in the dining room.
- 9. Many people \_\_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in poverty.
- 10. Robin \_\_\_\_\_ (to deliver) flyers to the houses.
- 11. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to write) on their desks.
- 12. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to whisper) in my ear.
- 13. You \_\_\_\_\_ (to break) the law.
- 14. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ (to ring) the bell.
- 15. My team \_\_\_\_\_ (to win).
- 16. The windows \_\_\_\_\_ (to rattle).
- 17. He \_\_\_\_\_\_ (to tease) the dog.
- 18. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ (to annoy) me.
- 19. Karen \_\_\_\_\_ (to curl) her hair.

| 20. | You                 | (to waste) my time.                   |
|-----|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 21. | The clown           | (to juggle) the balls.                |
| 22. | The toilet upstairs | (to overflow).                        |
| 23. | Your dog            | (to chew) on your high heels.         |
| 24. | The dentist         | (to put) a filling in my tooth.       |
| 25. | 1                   | (to send) a postcard to my godfather. |
| 26. | The police          | (to surround) the building.           |
| 27. | 1                   | (to leave) now.                       |
| 28. | Randy               | (to draw) a picture for his friend.   |
| 29. | The ice cubes       | (to melt) in my glass.                |
| 30. | 1                   | (to give) the dog a treat.            |
|     |                     |                                       |



# The Present Progressive (Continuous) Tense: Negative Form

Place *not* after the verb *to be* to create the negative form of the present progressive tense

I am following  $\rightarrow$  I am not following  $\rightarrow$  I am not following you.

you are following  $\rightarrow$  you are not following  $\rightarrow$  You are not following him.

he is following  $\rightarrow$  he is not following  $\rightarrow$  He is not following a recipe.

she is following  $\rightarrow$  she is not following  $\rightarrow$  She is not following the rules.

it is following  $\rightarrow$  it is not following  $\rightarrow$  It is not following me.

we are following  $\rightarrow$  we are not following  $\rightarrow$  We are not following the car.

they are following  $\rightarrow$  they are not following  $\rightarrow$  They are not following us.

The negative form of the present progressive tense can also be expressed with the contraction *isn't* or *aren't*. There is no contraction for *am not*.

I am not washing  $\rightarrow$  you aren't washing  $\rightarrow$  You aren't washing your hair. he is not washing  $\rightarrow$  he isn't washing  $\rightarrow$  He isn't washing his hands. she is not washing  $\rightarrow$  she isn't washing  $\rightarrow$  She isn't washing his hands. she is not washing  $\rightarrow$  she isn't washing  $\rightarrow$  She isn't washing the dishes. it is not washing  $\rightarrow$  it isn't washing  $\rightarrow$  It isn't washing its baby. we are not washing  $\rightarrow$  we aren't washing  $\rightarrow$  We aren't washing our car. they are not washing  $\rightarrow$  they aren't washing  $\rightarrow$  They aren't washing the dog.

EXERCISE 31.1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

to plant to sink to bury
to shout to wait to cheer
to stir to clap
seat belt seed paintbrush

| He i   | s shouting at you.                 |   |            |
|--------|------------------------------------|---|------------|
| The    | y are waiting downstairs for us.   |   |            |
| The    | ship is sinking.                   |   |            |
| The    | dog is burying the bone in the     |   |            |
| We     | are planting the seeds in the g    | arden.  |            |
| l am   | n teaching in the elementary sc    | hool this year.   |            |
| Mik    | e is stirring the paint with the p | paintbrush.   |            |
| You    | are wearing your seat belt         |   |            |
| The    | crowd is clapping and cheering     |   |            |
|        |                                    |   |            |
| XERCIS | SE                                 |   |            |
| 31.2   | Use your dictionary to find the    | e meaning of the following verbs a<br>e you begin. Write the words in you | •          |
|        | to separate                        | to stare  | to wink    |
|        | to wiggle                          | to bore   | to free    |
|        | to joke                            | to sharpen  | to swallow |
|        | to invite                          | to drip   | to complai |
|        | to surrender                       | to star   | to pray    |

\_\_\_\_\_ to solve

\_\_\_\_\_ to correct

\_\_\_\_\_ to dance

\_\_\_\_\_ to end

|     | coleslaw   | puzzle                          |                           | yolk         |
|-----|--|---------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------|
|     | real estate agent  | egg white                       |                           | grapefruit   |
|     | thief  | cabbage ro                      | oll                       | buffalo      |
|     | scissors   | tap                             |                           | relationship |
|     | horseshoe  | present                         |                           | puddle       |
|     | hostage  |                                 |                           |              |
|     | <b>m not</b> or the contraction <b>isn't</b> or <b>a</b> ll essive form. Add <b>-ing</b> to the simple |                                 | ntences in the negative p | resent       |
| 1.  | She (t   | o joke) about that.             |                           |              |
| 2.  | They   | to pray) in the church.         |                           |              |
| 3.  | We (to   | dance) together.                |                           |              |
| 4.  | I (to m  | nake) cabbage rolls and colesia | aw.                       |              |
| 5.  | He (to   | put) horseshoes on his horse    |                           |              |
| 6.  | The taps   | (to drip) in the bathroom.      |                           |              |
| 7.  | It (to v   | wiggle) in the box.             |                           |              |
| 8.  | We (to   | walk) in the puddle.            |                           |              |
| 9.  | My mother  | (to squeeze) the grapefr        | uit.                      |              |
| 10. | (to se   | eparate) the yolk and egg whi   | te.                       |              |
| 11. | We (to   | end) our relationship.          |                           |              |
| 12. | The teacher  | (to correct) the exams.         |                           |              |
| 13. | We (to   | o complain).                    |                           |              |
| 14. | lt (to l   | oore) me.                       |                           |              |
| 15. | He (to   | aim) his rifle at the buffalo.  |                           |              |
| 16. | Ronald and Lee   | (to solve) the puzzle           | 2.                        |              |
| 17. | My real estate agent   | (to work) hard.                 |                           |              |
| 18. | (to si   | tar) in a movie.                |                           |              |
| 19. | He (to   | wink) at you.                   |                           |              |
| 20. | They   | to free) the hostages.          |                           |              |
| 21. | The thief  | (to surrender) to the police    | 2.                        |              |
| 22. | We (to   | wrap) the presents.             |                           |              |
| 23. | The woman  | (to swallow) the medici         | ne.                       |              |
| 24. | He (to   | sharpen) the scissors.          |                           |              |
| 25. | The secretary  | (to type) a letter.             |                           |              |
| 26. | We (to   | invite) the neighbors.          |                           |              |

### The Present Progressive (Continuous) Tense: **Question Form**



Place the verb *to be* before the subject to create questions in the present progressive tense.

> I am watching you are watching he is watching

- am I watching
- → Am I watching you?

- she is watching
- → are you watching → is he watching
- → Are you watching the game? → Is he watching the news?

- it is watching we are watching
- → is she watching → is it watching
- → Is she watching the time?
- → are we watching
- → Is it watching me? → Are we watching them?
- they are watching  $\rightarrow$  are they watching  $\rightarrow$  Are they watching the kids?

EXERCISE 32·1

> Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>to enjoy  | to slice      | to bleed  |
|---------------|---------------|-----------|
| <br>to sweat  | to rock       | to offer  |
| <br>to talk   | to add        |           |
| <br>saleslady | deal          | sunrise   |
| newborn       | bow           | pineapple |
| <br>suburb    | lip           | expense   |
| <br>compass   | arrow         | forward   |
| <br>backward  | business trip |           |
| gas station   | employee      |           |

Rewrite the following sentences to create the question form of the present progressive tense by placing the verb **to be** before the subject. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer.

- 1. They are talking about the newborn baby.
- 2. He is hunting with a bow and arrow.

| 3.  | The saleslady is offering you a good deal.   |
|-----|--|
| 4.  | It is walking backward or forward.   |
| 5.  | The employees are adding their expenses for the business trip.   |
| 6.  | Mrs. Smith is living in the suburbs.   |
| 7.  | Mr. Jones is working in a gas station.   |
| 8.  | He is slicing the pineapple.   |
| 9.  | I am rocking the boat.   |
| 10. | She is sweating a lot.   |
| 11. | My lip is bleeding.  |
| 12. | You are bringing your compass when we go in the woods.   |
| 13. | Bob and Tina are on the beach enjoying the sunrise.  |
| 14. | I am eating your muffin.   |
| 15. | Rosa is making a cake for the surprise birthday party.   |
|     |  |
| EX  | XERCISE  |
|     | Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided. |
|     | to crawl to burst to wag   |
|     | to shuffle to fail to show   |

|     | to spy  | to grate                            | to suffer                   |  |  |
|-----|---|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|
|     | to sob  | to kid                              | to throw up                 |  |  |
|     | grater  | science                             | wheelbarrow                 |  |  |
|     | leaf  | bagpipes                            | breadboard                  |  |  |
|     | wave  | maple                               | crusty bread                |  |  |
|     | snail   | seal                                | water wings                 |  |  |
|     | te the following sentences to create of before the subject. | questions in the present progressiv | e tense by placing the verb |  |  |
| 1.  | Tom is spying on us.  |                                     |                             |  |  |
| 2.  | He is pushing the kids in the wl                            | neelbarrow.                         |                             |  |  |
| 3.  | The patient is suffering a lot. $\_$                        |                                     |                             |  |  |
| 4.  | She is cutting the crusty bread                             | on the breadboard                   |                             |  |  |
| 5.  | Jimmy is throwing up in the ba                              | throom                              |                             |  |  |
| 6.  | I am failing my science class. $\_$                         |                                     |                             |  |  |
| 7.  | Roger is playing the bagpipes.                              |                                     |                             |  |  |
| 8.  | The children are bursting the ba                            | alloons.                            |                             |  |  |
| 9.  | The little boy is showing me so                             | mething                             |                             |  |  |
| 10. | The snail is crawling on the tree                           | <b>.</b>                            |                             |  |  |
| 11. | Shane is drawing a maple leaf.                              |                                     |                             |  |  |
| 12. | The seals are playing in the way                            | es                                  |                             |  |  |
| 13. | . They are swimming in the pool with their water wings      |                                     |                             |  |  |
| 14. | Chris is grating the cheese with                            | the grater.                         |                             |  |  |
| 15. | They are kidding.   |                                     |                             |  |  |
| 16. | He is shuffling the cards                                   |                                     |                             |  |  |
| 17. | Grace is sobbing in her bedroom.                            |                                     |                             |  |  |
| 18. | The dog is wagging its tail                                 |                                     |                             |  |  |
|     |   |                                     |                             |  |  |



### The Past Progressive (Continuous) Tense

The past progressive is used to describe an activity that happened and continued for a period of time in the past. It is formed using the past tense of the verb *to be* and by adding *-ing* to the simple form of the verb.

I am using → I was using I was using the stove. → you were using You were using my stapler. you are using → he was using he is using  $\rightarrow$  He was using my car. → she was using she is using  $\rightarrow$  She was using my makeup. it is using → it was using → It was using its paws. → we were using We were using the glue. we are using they are using  $\rightarrow$  they were using  $\rightarrow$ They were using the laptop.

33·1

| to enter       | to cover    | to roll |
|----------------|-------------|---------|
| <br>to lower   | to change   | to talk |
| <br>to test    | to divide   | to ram  |
| <br>to drop    | to place    | to glov |
| shock          | tollbooth   | music   |
| <br>tour       | distance    | during  |
| <br>wig        | disease     | AIDS    |
| lightbulb      | christening |         |
| <br>snowshoe   | up-to-date  |         |
| <br>headphones | laboratory  |         |
| Grand Canyon   |             |         |

Rewrite the following sentences to form the past progressive tense. Use the correct past tense form of the verb **to be**, and add **-ing** to the simple form of the verb in parentheses. 1. The laboratory (to test) the blood for AIDS and other diseases. 2. We (to walk) in the snow with our snowshoes. 3. The mechanic (to lower) the car when it fell. 4. The girls (to talk) on the phone for two hours. 5. I (to change) the lightbulb when I got a shock. 6. The kids (to roll) down the mountain. 7. She (to place) a wig on her head when I entered. 8. George (to listen) to music with his headphones. 9. Vance (to cover) his answers during the test. 10. We (to buy) a gift for the christening. 11. I (to drop) a quarter in the tollbooth when he rammed the back of my car. 12. My daughter (to blow) her nose. 13. The lights (to glow) in the distance. 14. They (to struggle) to keep the files up-to-date. 15. We (to divide) our time between the Grand Canyon and the casinos.

| EXERCISE |  |
|----------|--|
| 33.2     |  |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space

|     | to weave   |                           | to scold                | to warn                       |
|-----|--|---------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
|     | to welcome   |                           | to grieve               | to gamble                     |
|     | to comb  |                           | to crush                | to bloom                      |
|     | to hatch   |                           | to act                  | to reach                      |
|     | janitor  |                           |                         | drops                         |
|     | parlor   |                           | raincoat                | tights                        |
|     | pork   |                           | widower                 | recess                        |
| -   | label  |                           | memo                    | tablet                        |
|     | hostess  |                           | spoon                   | bean                          |
|     | railroad   |                           |                         | spark                         |
|     | widow  |                           | goal                    | bulletin board                |
|     | strange  |                           | nuts                    | everywhere                    |
|     | olete the following sentences<br>to be, and add -ing to the sa |                           |                         | orrect past tense form of the |
| 1.  | The flowers  | (to blo                   | oom) in the garden.     |                               |
| 2.  | . Réal (to eat) pork and                                       |                           | and beans.              |                               |
| 3.  | 3. Sam (to crush) the tablets with a spoon.                    |                           |                         |                               |
| 4.  | The old man  | (to w                     | arn) us.                |                               |
| 5.  | The hostess  | (to we                    | elcome) our guests.     |                               |
| 6.  | 1  | $_{-}$ (to put) the mem   | o on the bulletin boa   | rd.                           |
| 7.  | We   | (to wear) our r           | aincoats.               |                               |
| 8.  | The kids   | (to play) l               | oall during recess.     |                               |
| 9.  | The squirrels  | (to hi                    | ide) the nuts in the ba | ackyard.                      |
| 10. | 1  | $_{-}$ (to read) the labe | l on the can.           |                               |

11. Manon \_\_\_\_\_ (to wear) white tights.

13. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to cry) at school today.

15. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to weave) baskets.

12. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to talk) to my boss in his office.

14. The widow \_\_\_\_\_ (to grieve) for a long time.

| 16. | l           | (to comb) my hair.  |
|-----|-------------|---|
| 17. | She         | (to scold) her children.                                  |
| 18. | My father   | (to work) on the railroad.                                |
| 19. | You         | (to frighten) the kids with that scary mask on your face. |
| 20. | My uncle    | (to gamble) all night.                                    |
| 21. | The sparks  | (to fly) everywhere.                                      |
| 22. | The widower | (to act) strange at the funeral parlor.                   |
| 23. | We          | (to reach) our goals.                                     |
| 24. | Suzanne     | (to sweep) the sidewalk.                                  |
| 25. | The eggs    | (to hatch).   |
| 26. | 1           | (to put) drops in my eyes.                                |



### The Past Progressive (Continuous) Tense: **Negative Form**

Place *not* after the past tense form of the verb *to be* to create the negative form of the past progressive tense.

> I was moving he was moving she was moving  $\rightarrow$  she was not moving it was moving

- → I was not moving
- you were moving → you were not moving
  - → he was not moving
  - → it was not moving
- we were moving  $\rightarrow$  we were not moving
- → I was not moving my leg.
- → You were not moving it.
- → He was not moving his pen.
- → She was not moving her lips.
- $\rightarrow$  It was not moving its tail.
- → We were not moving our car.
- they were moving  $\rightarrow$  they were not moving  $\rightarrow$  They were not moving it.

The negative form of the past progressive tense can also be expressed with the contraction wasn't or weren't.

> I was not helping he was not helping she was not helping it was not helping

- → I wasn't helping
- → he wasn't helping
- → she wasn't helping → it wasn't helping
- → I wasn't helping him. you were not helping → you weren't helping → You weren't helping me.
  - → He wasn't helping his aunt.
  - → She wasn't helping the nurse.
  - → It wasn't helping us.
- we were not helping  $\rightarrow$  we weren't helping  $\rightarrow$  We weren't helping her.
- they were not helping  $\rightarrow$  they weren't helping  $\rightarrow$  They weren't helping them.

EXERCISE 34∙1

| <br>to nip   | to choke     | to succeed |
|--------------|--------------|------------|
| <br>to smile |              |            |
| <br>side     | cancer       | course     |
| <br>collar   | stomach      | treatment  |
| luna         | chemotherapy |            |

| y stomach was growling in class this morning.  e were driving on the wrong side of the road. |
|--|
|  |
|  |
| e was smiling at you   |
| was nipping my ankle   |
| ne collar was choking the dog  |
| nia was succeeding in her course and she quit.   |
|  |
| 1  |

|   | EXERCISE    |
|---|-------------|
| 1 | 24.2        |
|   | <b>J</b> TZ |

| to count   | to pet    | to dive     |
|------------|-----------|-------------|
| to taste   | to overdo | to drip     |
| to snip    | to hover  | to distract |
| to carve   | to flap   | to slur     |
| to cope    | to rot    | to rely     |
| to breathe |           |             |
| officer    | speech    | wire        |
| word       | donkey    | artist      |

|     | teeth           | lampshade  | welfare     |
|-----|-----------------|--|-------------|
|     | shotgun         | chick  | helicopter  |
|     | dock            | underwear  | undercover  |
|     | grease          | escalator  | gingerbread |
|     | wing            | dental floss   |             |
|     |                 | es using the contraction <b>wasn't</b> or <b>weren't</b><br>progressive form. Add <b>-ing</b> to the simple form |             |
| 1.  | He              | (to snip) the black wire.  |             |
| 2.  | The officer     | (to work) undercover.  |             |
| 3.  | You             | (to overdo) it.  |             |
| 4.  | The man         | (to rely) on welfare.  |             |
| 5.  | The hunter      | (to carry) a shotgun.  |             |
| 6.  | We              | (to make) a gingerbread house.   |             |
| 7.  | The artist      | (to carve) the wood.   |             |
| 8.  | She             | (to cope) with it very well.   |             |
| 9.  | He              | (to slur) his words.   |             |
| 10. | They            | (to dive) in your pool.  |             |
| 11. | 1               | (to taste) your dessert.   |             |
| 12. | We              | (to feed) the ducks.   |             |
| 13. | 1               | (to clean) my teeth with dental flos   | S.          |
| 14. | The bird        | (to flap) its wings.   |             |
| 15. | You             | (to distract) me during my speed   | ch.         |
| 16. | The grease      | (to drip) on the floor.  |             |
| 17. | He              | (to wear) a lampshade on his hea   | nd.         |
| 18. | We              | (to sit) on the dock.  |             |
| 19. | They            | (to jump) on the escalator.  |             |
| 20. | The apples      | (to rot) on the ground.  |             |
| 21. | The helicopter  | (to hover) over my ho  | ouse.       |
| 22. | The little girl | (to pet) the donkey.   |             |
| 23. | We              | (to count) the baby chicks.  |             |
| 24. | He              | (to wear) clean underwear.   |             |
| 25. | She             | (to breathe).  |             |
| 26. | They            | (to laugh).  |             |

### The Past Progressive (Continuous) Tense: **Question Form**



Place the past tense form of the verb *to be* before the subject to create questions in the past progressive tense.

- I was swimming he was swimming it was swimming
  - → was I swimming
- → was he swimming she was swimming  $\rightarrow$  was she swimming
  - → was it swimming
- → Was I swimming well?
- you were swimming  $\rightarrow$  were you swimming  $\rightarrow$  Were you swimming alone?
  - → Was he swimming with you?
  - → Was she swimming at night?
  - → Was it swimming in the bath?
- we were swimming  $\rightarrow$  were we swimming  $\rightarrow$  Were we swimming better?
- they were swimming  $\rightarrow$  were they swimming  $\rightarrow$  Were they swimming fast?

EXERCISE

| <br>to drift    | to crack        | to grab  |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------|
| to heal         | to attract      | to dust  |
| to thaw         | to guide        | to float |
| <br>to hope     | to stop         |          |
| <br>to rehearse |                 |          |
|                 |                 |          |
| <br>bull        | _ vitamin       | horn     |
| snorkel         | attention       | actor    |
| wound           | nightgown       | sea      |
| <br>body        | pregnancy       | match    |
| <br>peacock     | _ watermelon    |          |
| goggles         | corn on the cob |          |

|     | te the following sentences to create the question form of the past progressive tense by placing <b>was</b> or before the subject. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer. |
|-----|---|
| 1.  | The police were stopping everyone at the corner.  |
| 2.  | My yellow rubber duck was floating in the bath.   |
| 3.  | The meat was thawing on the counter.  |
| 4.  | The wounds on his body were healing.  |
| 5.  | She was hoping for a new nightgown for Christmas.   |
| 6.  | The ice was cracking on the lake.   |
| 7.  | The beautiful peacock was attracting a lot of attention.  |
| 8.  | She was buying watermelon and corn on the cob for the picnic.   |
| 9.  | The actors were rehearsing for the play.  |
| 10. | It was drifting on the sea.   |
| 11. | They were using matches to light the candles on the cake.   |
| 12. | You were swimming with goggles and a snorkel.   |
| 13. | Réal was grabbing the bull by the horns.  |
| 14. | She was taking vitamins during her pregnancy.   |
| 15. | The housekeeper was dusting the furniture.  |
|     |   |

|   | EXERCISE |  |
|---|----------|--|
| 1 | 35.2     |  |
| ` | 22.4     |  |

|     | 40  | to proton d | to dovo     |  |  |  |
|-----|---|-------------|-------------|--|--|--|
|     |   | to pretend  |             |  |  |  |
|     | to investigate  |             |             |  |  |  |
|     | to rip  | to start    | _ to spit   |  |  |  |
|     | to omit   | to beg      | _ to raise  |  |  |  |
|     | crime detail cart   |             |             |  |  |  |
|     | barefoot detective elbow  |             |             |  |  |  |
|     | ox  | pebble      | _ goat      |  |  |  |
|     | waist   | hip         | _ ape       |  |  |  |
|     | ite the following sentences to create questions in the the subject. Don't forget to include a question ma |             | was or were |  |  |  |
| 1.  | She was starting her car.   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 2.  | They were begging us to stay for supper.  |             |             |  |  |  |
| 3.  | We were closing the store early   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 4.  | They were walking barefoot on the pebbles.  |             |             |  |  |  |
| 5.  | The dog was panting   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 6.  | You were scratching your elbow.   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 7.  | She was measuring her waist and hips.   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 8.  | Danny was daring me to jump in the lake   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 9.  | It was eating my peanut butter sandwich   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 10. | You were ripping my sweater   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 11. | Gary was omitting the details   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 12. | It was following me   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 13. | The detectives were investigating the crime.  |             |             |  |  |  |
| 14. | He was spitting on the sidewalk   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 15. | They were raising goats.  |             |             |  |  |  |
| 16. | You were pretending to be a big ape   |             |             |  |  |  |
| 17. | I was reading the right letter.   |             |             |  |  |  |
|     | The ox was pulling the cart.  |             |             |  |  |  |
|     | , 3   |             |             |  |  |  |



## Prepositions: From and Of

Use *from* as a preposition to:

indicate a starting point of

|    | a movement   | measure between points                    |
|----|--|---|
|    | We drove from Montreal to Toronto.   | I work <u>from 8:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m.</u> |
|    | indicate a starting point of an action   | indicate the source                       |
|    | My husband called me from work.  | She got the information from John         |
| U  | se <i>of</i> as a preposition to:  |   |
|    | indicate the cause or reason of an action  | indicate belonging                        |
|    | He died of a heart attack.   | I met the queen of England.               |
|    | indicate the contents  | describe a characteristic of a person     |
|    | I drank two cups of coffee this morning.   | He is a man of great courage.             |
|    | talent beyo  | ond value                                 |
|    | bouquet  |   |
|    | ite the following sentences correctly by choosing <b>f</b><br>We gave her a beautiful bouquet (from, of) |   |
| 2. | I got a toothbrush (from, of) my dentist.  |   |
| 3. | He is a member (from, of) the hockey hall (  | from, of) fame.                           |
|    |  |   |

| 4. | She sent me a postcard (from, of) Canada.       |  |          |  |  |  |
|----|---|--|----------|--|--|--|
| 5. | Peter is a man (from, of) many talents.         |  |          |  |  |  |
| 6. | We heard voices (from, of) beyond the bushes.   |  |          |  |  |  |
| 7. | He called me (from, of) a pay ph                | none.  |          |  |  |  |
| 8. | I need a cup (from, of) sugar for               | this recipe.   |          |  |  |  |
| 9. | Is that guy (from, of) Mexico?                  |  |          |  |  |  |
| 0. | I work (from, of) Monday to Thu                 | rsday. I don't work Friday.                                      |          |  |  |  |
| 1. | Do you want a glass (from, of) b                | eer?   |          |  |  |  |
| 2. | She is a woman (from, of) value in our company. |  |          |  |  |  |
| 3. | The cat jumped (from, of) the co                | ouch to the window.  |          |  |  |  |
| 4. | Open the gift (from, of) me.                    |  |          |  |  |  |
|    |   | the meaning of the new vocabu<br>Write the words in your languag |          |  |  |  |
|    |   | ,  | odor     |  |  |  |
|    | mouthful  | spoonful   | century  |  |  |  |
|    | herd  | popcorn  | theater  |  |  |  |
|    | coventy   | littor   | antolo s |  |  |  |

Complete the following sentences with **from** or **of**.

| 1.  | She brought a basket fruit for us.               |
|-----|--|
| 2.  | He is a man experience.                          |
| 3.  | We receive checks monthly the insurance company. |
| 4.  | The little girl has a mouthful milk.             |
| 5.  | Are you Montreal?                                |
| 6.  | Put this box books in the basement.              |
| 7.  | Do you want a cup tea?                           |
| 8.  | The odor is coming the fridge.                   |
| 9.  | I have a picture you.                            |
| 10. | Take out a sheet paper your binder.              |
| 11. | Do you want to play a game cards?                |
| 12. | My cat had a litter kittens last night.          |
| 13. | We get vitamins food.                            |
| 14. | I bought a bag popcorn at the theater.           |
| 15. | She counted one to seventy in French.            |
| 16. | I borrowed it my cousin.                         |
| 17. | What is the special the day?                     |
| 18. | My uncle died cancer.                            |
| 19. | I have a closet full old shoes.                  |
| 20. | I just got home school.                          |
| 21. | Who is the woman the decade?                     |
| 22. | She moved her apartment to a retirement home.    |
| 23. | We just came back Italy.                         |
| 24. | She works her home office.                       |
| 25. | I ate a bowl chicken soup for lunch.             |
| 26. | We got a call your teacher.                      |
| 27. | I need a spoonful honey.                         |
| 28. | You have a message Tom.                          |
| 29. | We picked fresh tomatoes our garden.             |
| 30. | Thank you for the box chocolates.                |
| 31. | There is a herd horses in the field.             |
| 32. | The gorilla escaped the zoo.                     |

| 33. | Where is the jar pickles?           |
|-----|-------------------------------------|
| 34. | I received a long e-mail my aunt.   |
| 35. | We drank a bottle wine with dinner. |
| 36. | She ordered it the new catalog.     |
| 37. | Who is the person the century?      |
| 38. | I got the results my doctor.        |

#### Will: Future Tense

Use *will* to create the future tense for all persons. The simple form of the verb always follows *will*.

I will I will hold I will hold your books. → you will hold You will hold the baby. you will He will hold my hand. → he will hold he will  $\rightarrow$  she will hold  $\rightarrow$  She will hold her doll. she will → it will hold → It will hold the ball. it will we will  $\rightarrow$  we will hold  $\rightarrow$  We will hold our fishing rods. they will  $\rightarrow$  they will hold  $\rightarrow$ They will hold the ladder.

37·1

| <br>to flip      | _ to reduce | to envy     |
|------------------|-------------|-------------|
| <br>to ship      | to enlarge  | _ to gather |
| <br>to hug       | to become   | _ to grant  |
| <br>to ban       | to pamper   |             |
| <br>to introduce |             |             |
|                  |             |             |
| <br>fairy        | author      | raspberry   |
| <br>top          | famous      | lighthouse  |
| <br>tax          | cherry      | tobacco     |
| <br>brain        | several     | swordfish   |
| <br>rich         | blueberry   | friendship  |
| government       |             |             |

parentheses. 1. I (to climb) to the top of the lighthouse to see the ships. 2. You (to become) a rich and famous author. 3. The government (to reduce) taxes next year. 4. The fairy (to grant) you several wishes. 5. My mother (to make) a cherry pie. 6. We (to study) the brain in my science class. 7. They (to enlarge) the picture of the swordfish that they caught. 8. We (to gather) blueberries, strawberries, and raspberries to make jam. 9. He (to hug) and kiss you when he sees you. 10. Brad (to introduce) me to his parents tomorrow night. 11. We (to ship) the package to you this afternoon. 12. Mary (to envy) your friendship with Paul. 13. The government (to ban) tobacco in all public places. 14. She (to pamper) her new baby. 15. I (to flip) the pancakes now.

Rewrite the following sentences in the future tense by using will and the simple form of the verb in

|   | EXERCISE |   |
|---|----------|---|
| 1 | 07.0     | ١ |
|   | 3/.2     |   |

|      | to donate                          | to develop                                      |                      | to miss           |
|------|------------------------------------|---|----------------------|-------------------|
|      | to inform                          | to stimulate                                    |                      | to continue       |
|      | to tame                            | to postpone                                     |                      | to calculate      |
|      | to wonder                          | to nod  |                      | to balance        |
|      | to cause                           | to last   |                      | to bake           |
|      | to concen                          | rate  |                      |                   |
|      | budget                             | muscle  |                      | fine (n)          |
|      | bake sale                          | career  |                      | circus            |
|      | music                              | pay   |                      | only              |
|      | organ                              | drum  |                      | twice             |
|      | speeding                           | once  |                      | lion              |
|      | taste bud                          | outcome   |                      | why               |
|      | wonderfu                           | public transp                                   | ortation             |                   |
| Comp | olete the sentences using <b>w</b> | <b>ill</b> and the simple form of the verb in p | arentheses to create | the future tense. |
| 1.   | Brian                              | (to calculate) his pay.                         |                      |                   |
| 2.   | We                                 | (to balance) our budget.                        |                      |                   |
| 3.   | Denis                              | (to develop) his muscles a                      | t the gym.           |                   |
| 4.   | They                               | (to concentrate) on their ca                    | areers.              |                   |
| 5.   | lt                                 | (to last) a long time.                          |                      |                   |
| 6.   | We                                 | (to postpone) the meeting.                      |                      |                   |
| 7.   | He                                 | (to learn) to play the drums.                   |                      |                   |
| 8.   | They                               | (to tame) the lions for the                     | circus.              |                   |
| 9.   | I                                  | (to tell) you only once.                        |                      |                   |
| 10.  | They                               | (to wonder) why we left.                        |                      |                   |
| 11.  | We                                 | (to order) a pizza for supper.                  |                      |                   |
| 12.  | The neighbors                      | (to move) next m                                | onth.                |                   |
| 13.  | I                                  | (to miss) you.                                  |                      |                   |
| 14.  | She                                | (to bake) cookies for the bal                   | ke sale.             |                   |
| 15   | Ricky Martin                       | (to continue) to ma                             | ike wonderful mus    | ic                |

| 16. | lt            | (to be) cold tomorrow.          |
|-----|---------------|---------------------------------|
| 17. | He            | _ (to nod) his head twice.      |
| 18. | We            | (to use) public transportation. |
| 19. | You           | (to get) a fine for speeding.   |
| 20. | lt            | (to stimulate) your taste buds. |
| 21. | You           | (to cause) a serious accident.  |
| 22. | She           | (to donate) her organs.         |
| 23. | He            | (to inform) us of the outcome.  |
| 24. | Jim and Scott | (to share) the expenses.        |



### Will: Future Tense: Negative Form

Place *not* after *will* to create the negative form of the future tense. The simple form of the verb always follows *will not*.

I will  $\rightarrow$  I will not  $\rightarrow$  I will not be there. you will → you will not  $\rightarrow$  You will not say that. he will  $\rightarrow$  he will not  $\rightarrow$  He will not pay me. she will  $\rightarrow$  she will not  $\rightarrow$  She will not see you. it will → it will not  $\rightarrow$  It will not eat.  $\rightarrow$  we will not → We will not borrow money. we will they will  $\rightarrow$  they will not  $\rightarrow$  They will not drive to New York.

The negative form of the future tense with *will* can be expressed with the contraction *won't*.

I will not  $\rightarrow$  I won't  $\rightarrow$  I won't go. you will not  $\rightarrow$  you won't  $\rightarrow$  You won't convince her. he will not  $\rightarrow$  he won't  $\rightarrow$  He won't know. she will not  $\rightarrow$  she won't  $\rightarrow$  She won't sleep late. it will not  $\rightarrow$  it won't  $\rightarrow$  It won't bite you. we will not  $\rightarrow$  we won't  $\rightarrow$  We won't spend a lot. they will not  $\rightarrow$  they won't  $\rightarrow$  They won't help us.

38·1

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

to recognize to allow to trim
to celebrate to pawn to stay
to confess to declare

sideburns overnight guitar
blind date murder bush
bankruptcy New Year's Eve

|    | te the following sentences to create th<br>not and once with the contraction wo |  | Write your answer once with |  |  |  |
|----|---|--|-----------------------------|--|--|--|
| 1. | He will declare bankruptcy.   |  |                             |  |  |  |
| 2. | My neighbor will trim his bushes.   |  |                             |  |  |  |
| 3. | John will trim his sideburns  |  |                             |  |  |  |
| 4. | Anna will go on a blind date  |  |                             |  |  |  |
| 5. | You will recognize me with my w   | rig  |                             |  |  |  |
| 6. | They will allow you to stay overn   | ight   |                             |  |  |  |
| 7. | We will celebrate on New Year's I   | Eve.   |                             |  |  |  |
| 8. | The man will confess to the muro  | der  |                             |  |  |  |
| 9. | I will pawn my guitar.  |  |                             |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |                             |  |  |  |
|    | 88·2  |  |                             |  |  |  |
|    | Use your dictionary to find t   | the meaning of the following verbs one you begin. Write the words in you | •                           |  |  |  |
|    | to delay  | to operate   | to clog                     |  |  |  |
|    | to betray   | to issue   | to improve                  |  |  |  |
|    | to hand   | to benefit   | to attempt                  |  |  |  |
|    | to tolerate   | to guess   | to ruin                     |  |  |  |
|    | to pierce   | to purchase  | to cure                     |  |  |  |
|    | to compensate   |  |                             |  |  |  |
|    | tool  | drain  | newsletter                  |  |  |  |

\_ guilty

\_\_ soap

\_\_\_\_\_ will (n)

|     | job                                      | weight                                     |                    | product          |
|-----|--|--|--------------------|------------------|
|     | flight                                   | hell                                       |                    | wisdom teeth     |
|     | heaven                                   | spine                                      |                    | loss             |
|     | breast                                   | custody                                    |                    | reputation       |
|     | suit                                     | rundown                                    |                    | insurance policy |
|     | tongue                                   | jet  |                    | agreement        |
|     | plete the following sentence<br>otheses. | s by using the contraction <b>won't</b> ar | nd the simple forr | m of the verb in |
| 1.  | You                                      | (to ruin) your reputation.                 |                    |                  |
| 2.  | lt                                       | (to clog) the drain.                       |                    |                  |
| 3.  | My company                               | (to issue) the ne                          | wsletter.          |                  |
| 4.  | We                                       | (to improve) our products                  | this year.         |                  |
| 5.  | 1  | (to guess) your weight.                    |                    |                  |
| 6.  | They                                     | (to discuss) heaven and                    | hell.              |                  |
| 7.  | We                                       | (to benefit) from this insur               | ance policy.       |                  |
| 8.  | lt                                       | (to delay) our flight.                     |                    |                  |
| 9.  | They                                     | (to compensate) us for o                   | ur loss.           |                  |
| 10. | She                                      | (to allow) me to pierce my                 | y tongue.          |                  |
| 11. | The treatment                            | (to cure) breast                           | cancer.            |                  |
| 12. | He                                       | (to purchase) new tools for                | r his job.         |                  |
| 13. | The students                             | (to listen) to the                         | ir teacher.        |                  |
| 14. | The pilot                                | (to attempt) to fly th                     | e jet.             |                  |
| 15. | He                                       | (to wear) his black suit.                  |                    |                  |
| 16. | They                                     | (to sign) the agreement.                   |                    |                  |
| 17. | My aunt                                  | (to make) a will.                          |                    |                  |
| 18. | The doctors                              | (to operate) on m                          | ıy spine.          |                  |
| 19. | We                                       | (to betray) you.                           |                    |                  |
| 20. | My dentist                               | (to remove) my wis                         | sdom teeth.        |                  |
| 21. | She                                      | (to have) custody of the c                 | hildren.           |                  |
| 22. | They                                     | (to live) in a rundown bu                  | ıilding.           |                  |
| 23. | It                                       | (to mean) that he is guilty.               |                    |                  |
| 24. | I  | (to tolerate) this behavior.               |                    |                  |
| 25. | Louise                                   | (to hand) me the soap.                     |                    |                  |
| 26. | You                                      | (to fail) your exam.                       |                    |                  |

### Will: Future Tense: Question Form



Place *will* before the subject to create questions in the future tense. The simple form of the verb is always used when forming questions with *will*.

| I will    | $\rightarrow$ | will I like     | $\rightarrow$ | Will I like it?              |
|-----------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| you will  | $\rightarrow$ | will you call   | $\rightarrow$ | Will you call me?            |
| he will   | $\rightarrow$ | will he write   | $\rightarrow$ | Will he write a book?        |
| she will  | $\rightarrow$ | will she join   | $\rightarrow$ | Will she join us for dinner? |
| it will   | $\rightarrow$ | will it annoy   | $\rightarrow$ | Will it annoy you?           |
| we will   | $\rightarrow$ | will we need    | $\rightarrow$ | Will we need a new car?      |
| they will | $\rightarrow$ | will they worry | $\rightarrow$ | Will they worry about me?    |

39·1

| to travel     | <br>to punish     |             |
|---------------|-------------------|-------------|
| to spray      | <br>to disappear  |             |
| to rescue     | <br>to mention    |             |
| <br>to kick   | <br>to partake    |             |
| <br>to accuse | <br>to show       |             |
| <br>to poison | <br>to measure    |             |
|               |                   |             |
| <br>fang      | <br>island        | brand-new   |
| <br>wasp      | pajamas           | foreman     |
| bee           | <br>writing       | competition |
| <br>muscle    | <br>eagle         | last name   |
| toaster       | <br>ironing board |             |
| poison        | tape measure      |             |

| Rewrite the following sentences to create the question form of the future tense by placing <b>will</b> before the subject. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer. |   |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|
| 1.   | The snow will disappear in the spring.                          |  |  |  |  |
| 2.   | Your mother will punish you for that.                           |  |  |  |  |
| 3.   | The police will accuse Sara.                                    |  |  |  |  |
| 4.   | You will spell your last name for me.                           |  |  |  |  |
| 5.   | She will throw her old pajamas in the garbage.                  |  |  |  |  |
| 6.   | He will measure it with his brand-new tape measure.             |  |  |  |  |
| 7.   | Bobby will show the judges his muscles.                         |  |  |  |  |
| 8.   | It will poison you with its fangs.                              |  |  |  |  |
| 9.   | They will mention it to their foreman.                          |  |  |  |  |
| 10.  | The gardener will spray the wasps and bees with poison.         |  |  |  |  |
| 11.  | They will rescue the eagles on the island.                      |  |  |  |  |
| 12.  | Your boyfriend will partake in the writing competition.         |  |  |  |  |
| 13.  | We will travel a lot next year.                                 |  |  |  |  |
| 14.  | It will kick me.  |  |  |  |  |
| 15.  | She will buy a new ironing board and toaster for her apartment. |  |  |  |  |



|  | to grind                                     | to publish | to blame  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|------------|-----------|--|--|--|--|
|  | to produce                                   | to require | to trade  |  |  |  |  |
|  | to sag                                       | to regret  | to expand |  |  |  |  |
|  | to respond                                   | to pause   | to arrive |  |  |  |  |
|  | .0. 1  |            |           |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | magnet     | ·         |  |  |  |  |
|  | rush hour                                    | painting   | trailer   |  |  |  |  |
|  | mouth  | on time    |           |  |  |  |  |
| Rewrite the following sentences to create questions in the future tense by placing <b>will</b> before the subject. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer. |  |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 1.   | It will arrive on time.                      |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 2.   | He will publish his report.                  |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 3.   | They will blame me                           |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 4.   | We will be in rush hour traffic.             |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 5.   | Our country will ban the sale of ivory       |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 6.   | Sheila will stick the magnet on the fridg    | je         |           |  |  |  |  |
| 7.   | You will close your mouth when you ear       | t          | _         |  |  |  |  |
| 8.   | We will produce a lot of corn this year.     |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 9.   | Our company will expand next year            |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 10.  | It will rain tomorrow.                       |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 11.  | We will trade our trailer for a boat         |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 12.  | He will pause the movie for a few minutes    |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 13.  | I will regret it.                            |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 14.  | It will grind the coffee beans.              |            | _         |  |  |  |  |
| 15.  | You will require stitches in your knee. $\_$ |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 16.  | The roof will sag with all the snow on it.   |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 17.  | They will bid on the famous painting. $\_$   |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 18.  | I will gain weight if I eat this.            |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 19.  | He will respond.                             |            |           |  |  |  |  |
| 20.  | I will have enough time.                     |            |           |  |  |  |  |



#### •40 Be Going To: Future Tense

The future tense can also be expressed by using *be going to*. Use the correct form of the verb *to be* for each person. The simple form of the verb always follows *be going to*.

| I am going to     | $\rightarrow$ | I am going to explain  | $\rightarrow$ | I am going to explain it to you again. |
|-------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------|--|
| you are going to  | $\rightarrow$ | you are going to need  | $\rightarrow$ | You are going to need a hammer.        |
| he is going to    | $\rightarrow$ | he is going to answer  | $\rightarrow$ | He is going to answer the question.    |
| she is going to   | $\rightarrow$ | she is going to have   | $\rightarrow$ | She is going to have a baby.           |
| it is going to    | $\rightarrow$ | it is going to be      | $\rightarrow$ | It is going to be expensive.           |
| we are going to   | $\rightarrow$ | we are going to prove  | $\rightarrow$ | We are going to prove it to you.       |
| they are going to | $\rightarrow$ | they are going to meet | $\rightarrow$ | They are going to meet downtown.       |

EXERCISE 40.1

| <br>to lift  | to spread | to hurry    |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|
| <br>to dirty | to injure | to applaud  |
| <br>to shine | to vomit  | to remove   |
| <br>to check | to create | to surprise |
| <br>sun      | lobby     | shallow     |
| <br>end      | schedule  | muddy       |
| <br>deep     | too much  | audience    |
| unset        | manager   | waterhed    |

**be** and the simple form of the verb in parentheses. 1. I (be) going to (to hurry) because I don't want to miss my bus. 2. He drank too much, and now he (be) going to (to vomit). 3. You (be) going to (to dirty) my floor with your muddy shoes. 4. The sun (be) going to (to shine) all day today. 5. I (be) going to (to wait) for you in the lobby downstairs. 6. We (be) going to (to sell) our waterbed in our garage sale. 7. The kids (be) going to (to swim) in the shallow end of the pool. 8. The adults (be) going to (to dive) in the deep end of the pool. 9. You (be) going to (to injure) your back if you lift that heavy box. 10. It (be) going to (to create) problems in the office. 11. I (be) going to (to spread) the jam on my toast. 12. My manager (be) going to (to check) his schedule for next week. 13. You (be) going to (to be) upset if the audience doesn't applaud. 14. He (be) going to (to surprise) her with a diamond ring. 15. She (be) going to (to remove) your name from the list.

Rewrite the following sentences in the future tense using **be going to**. Use the correct form of the verb **to** 



Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space

|       |                | to tighten                             | to commute  | to tap              |
|-------|----------------|--|---|---------------------|
|       |                | to assume                              | to admit  | to seem             |
|       |                | to skip                                | to suggest  | to vanish           |
|       |                | to remind                              | to clip   | to charge           |
|       |                | sample                                 | hairspray   | noon                |
|       |                | dawn                                   | someday   | proud               |
|       |                | partner                                | interest  | difficult           |
|       |                | receipt                                | turnip  | at first            |
|       |                | painful                                | shallot   | leash               |
|       |                | innocent                               |   |                     |
| parer | ntheses to cre | ate the future tense with <b>be go</b> | the verb <b>to be</b> and the simple for <b>sing to</b> .  (to assume) that h |                     |
|       |                |  | (to suggest) somet  |                     |
| ۷.    | meeting.       | going to                               | (to suggest) somet  | iming better at the |
| 3     | _              | going to                               | (to tighten) the le   | eash on the dog     |
|       |                |  | (to clip) the receipts  | _                   |
|       |                |  | (to observe) the st   |                     |
|       | at noon.       | gog to                                 | (10 0,000,100,100,000   |                     |
| 6.    | 1              | going to                               | (to give) you a samp  | le.                 |
| 7.    | It             | going to                               | (to seem) difficult at  | t first.            |
| 8.    | We             | going to                               | (to remind) you in  | the morning.        |
| 9.    | We             | going to                               | (to admit) the trut   | h.                  |
| 10.   | It             | going to                               | (to be) very painful.   |                     |
| 11.   | He             | going to                               | (to ask) his partner  | r.                  |
| 12.   | I              | going to                               | (to tap) him on the s   | houlder.            |
| 13.   | The stude      | nts going                              | to (to com  | mute) by train.     |
| 14.   | The boys _     | going to _                             | (to skip) sch   | ool this afternoon. |
| 15    | 1              | going to                               | (to put) shallots and   | turning in the staw |

| 16. | She      | going to | (to marry) Edward someday.                    |
|-----|----------|----------|---|
| 17. | It       | going to | $_{\scriptscriptstyle -}$ (to occur) at dawn. |
| 18. | They     | going to | (to charge) us interest.                      |
| 19. | This car | going to | (to belong) to me someday.                    |
| 20. | The fog  | going to | (to vanish) soon.                             |
| 21. | 1        | going to | (to buy) a can of hairspray.                  |
| 22. | You      | going to | (to be) very proud.                           |



### Be Going To: Future Tense: **Negative Form**

Place *not* after the verb *to be* to create the negative form of the future tense with be going to. The simple form of the verb always follows the negative form of be going to.

> I am going to → I am not going to  $\rightarrow$  I am not going to lose. you are going to → you are not going to  $\rightarrow$  You are not going to win. → he is not going to  $\rightarrow$  He is not going to be there. he is going to she is going to  $\rightarrow$  she is not going to  $\rightarrow$  She is not going to eat it. it is going to  $\rightarrow$  it is not going to  $\rightarrow$  It is not going to run. we are going to → we are not going to  $\rightarrow$  We are not going to leave. they are going to  $\rightarrow$  they are not going to  $\rightarrow$ They are not going to talk.

The negative form of the future tense with *be going to* can also be expressed with the contraction *isn't* or *aren't*. There is no contraction for *am not*.

> I am not going to he is not going to she is not going to it is not going to we are not going to they are not going to  $\rightarrow$

- → he isn't going to
- → she isn't going to
- $\rightarrow$  it isn't going to
- → I am not going to drive.
- you are not going to  $\rightarrow$  you aren't going to  $\rightarrow$  You aren't going to forget.
  - $\rightarrow$  He isn't going to play.
  - $\rightarrow$  She isn't going to study.
  - $\rightarrow$  It isn't going to rain.
  - $\rightarrow$  we aren't going to  $\rightarrow$  We aren't going to try it.
    - they aren't going to  $\rightarrow$  They aren't going to like it.



*Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and* vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

\_\_\_ to haunt \_\_\_\_\_ to submit \_\_\_\_ to reuse \_\_\_\_\_ to invest \_\_ \_\_ to chill \_\_ to withdraw \_\_\_\_\_\_ to announce \_\_\_\_\_ funds \_\_\_\_\_ report \_\_\_\_\_ stock market \_\_\_\_\_ ostrich \_\_\_\_\_ experience

| Rewrite the following sentences to create the negative form of the future tense of <b>be going to</b> . Write your |
|--|
| answer once with am not, is not, or are not and once with the contraction isn't or aren't.                         |

| 1. | My company is going to announce cutbacks for the new year. |  |          |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|----------|--|--|--|
| 2. | We are going to submit the report in the morning.          |  |          |  |  |  |
| 3. | I am going to withdraw all my money.                       |  |          |  |  |  |
| 4. | They are going to invest the fun                           | ds in the stock market   |          |  |  |  |
| 5. | This experience is going to haur                           | nt me for the rest of my life.   |          |  |  |  |
| 6. | Annie is going to chill the wine                           | before she serves it   |          |  |  |  |
|    | 3 3  |  |          |  |  |  |
| 7. | The ostrich is going to attack yo                          | u  |          |  |  |  |
|    |  |  |          |  |  |  |
| 8. | You are going to reuse the bags.                           |  |          |  |  |  |
| 9. | He is going to divorce his wife.                           |  |          |  |  |  |
|    | 1192   |  |          |  |  |  |
|    |  | the meaning of the following ver<br>fore you begin. Write the words in |          |  |  |  |
|    | to judge   | to wrestle   | to trap  |  |  |  |
|    | to steer   | to quarrel   | to label |  |  |  |
|    | to pry to trick to respect                                 |  |          |  |  |  |
|    | to curse to care to ensure                                 |  |          |  |  |  |
|    | to lessen to leap to can                                   |  |          |  |  |  |
|    | to empty   |  |          |  |  |  |
|    | checkers   | safety   | pain     |  |  |  |
|    | subpoena   | January  | February |  |  |  |

|     | March  | A <sub> </sub>        | pril                       | May                           |
|-----|--|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
|     | June   | be                    | eet                        | bailiff                       |
| -   | olete the following sentence<br>of the future tense of <b>be g</b> | _                     | ontraction <b>isn't</b> or | aren't to create the negative |
| 1.  | We   | going to trick yo     | u again.                   |                               |
| 2.  | She  | going to circle t     | he right answer            | :                             |
| 3.  | We   | going to respect      | his decision.              |                               |
| 4.  | They   | going to ensur        | e our safety.              |                               |
| 5.  | You  | going to curse i      | n my class.                |                               |
| 6.  | She  | going to empty        | her purse.                 |                               |
| 7.  | I  | going to label all tl | ne items in the s          | store.                        |
| 8.  | We   | going to can be       | ets this year.             |                               |
| 9.  | She  | going to care al      | oout that.                 |                               |
| 10. | We   | going to send th      | ne subpoena by             | bailiff.                      |
| 11. | It   | going to snow in .    | June.                      |                               |
| 12. | I  | going to be twenty    | /-five years old i         | n January.                    |
| 13. | She  | going to visit m      | e in March.                |                               |
| 14. | You  | going to have a       | nother operatio            | n.                            |
| 15. | They   | going to play o       | checkers all nigh          | nt.                           |
| 16. | I  | going to bake a ca    | ke.                        |                               |
| 17. | Nancy  | going to plac         | e the names in             | a hat.                        |
| 18. | We   | going to judge y      | ou.                        |                               |
| 19. | lt   | going to lessen th    | e pain.                    |                               |
| 20. | The frog   | going to le           | ap on you.                 |                               |
| 21. | They   | going to quarr        | el again.                  |                               |
| 22. | He   | going to pry the      | door open.                 |                               |
| 23. | Sidney   | going to stee         | er the boat.               |                               |
| 24. | The boys   | going to w            | restle in the liv          | ing room.                     |
| 25. | We   | going to be in To     | okyo in April.             |                               |
| 26. | He   | going to start his    | s new job in Ma            | y.                            |
| 27. | It   | going to open in I    | ebruary.                   |                               |
| 28. | We   | going to trap be      | avers.                     |                               |
|     |  |                       |                            |                               |

# Be Going To: Future Tense: 42 **Question Form**



Place the verb *to be* before the subject to create questions in the future tense of *be* going to. The simple form of the verb is always used when forming questions with be going to.

> I am going to → am I going to → Am I going to see you? you are going to  $\rightarrow$  are you going to → Are you going to visit me? he is going to  $\rightarrow$  is he going to → Is he going to believe you? she is going to  $\rightarrow$  is she going to → Is she going to be here? it is going to  $\rightarrow$  is it going to → Is it going to start soon? we are going to  $\rightarrow$  are we going to → Are we going to agree? are they going to  $\rightarrow$ Are they going to park there? they are going to  $\rightarrow$

EXERCISE

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the following verbs and vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>to dip    |     | to store      | to process |
|---------------|-----|---------------|------------|
| <br>to graze  |     | to apply      | to supply  |
| to turn       |     | to scrub      | to provide |
| to drain      |     | to immigrate  |            |
| <br>to cooper | ate |               |            |
| <br>July      |     | September     |            |
| <br>parents   |     | United States |            |
| <br>bathtub   |     | November      |            |
| <br>peace     |     | December      |            |
| <br>supplies  |     | explanation   |            |
| August        |     | knowledge     |            |
| <br>war       |     | immigration   |            |
| October       |     | snowhlower    |            |

the verb **to be** before the subject. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer. 1. He is going to share this knowledge with the world. 2. She is going to cooperate with us. 3. You are going to provide me with a good explanation. 4. They are going to immigrate to the United States in August. 5. It is going to turn green when I put it in water. 6. The immigration office is going to process my file in July. 7. My parents are going to supply me with my school supplies in September. 8. I am going to drain the vegetables with this. 9. They are going to complete the project in November or December. 10. She is going to apply for a new job in October. 11. You are going to scrub the bathtub now. 12. The cows and horses are going to graze in the field. 13. You are going to dip the apple in honey. 14. We are going to store the snowblower in the garage during the summer. 15. The teacher is going to talk about war and peace in history class today.

Rewrite the following sentences to create the question form of the future tense of **be going to** by placing

|    | •  | •               | eaning of the following verbs<br>u begin. Write the words in yo | · ·       |  |
|----|--|-----------------|---|-----------|--|
|    | to compete   |                 | to tidy   | to wish   |  |
|    | to promise   |                 | to assess   | to sort   |  |
|    | to rest  |                 | to whistle  |           |  |
|    | second   |                 | sunny   | shrimp    |  |
|    | werewolf   |                 | customs   | interview |  |
|    | icicle   |                 | oven mitts  |           |  |
| 1. | He is going to promise to be good.  You are going to wish for a car again. |                 |   |           |  |
| 3. | I am going to compete with you.  |                 |   |           |  |
| 4. | She is going to rest on the couch.   |                 |   |           |  |
| 5. | You are going to fake th   | at you are sicl | K.  |           |  |
|    |  |                 |   |           |  |

8. The insurance company is going to assess the damage.

7. Sonia is going to buy new oven mitts.

6. He is going to break the icicles with the shovel.

- 9. You are going to cry.
- 10. It is going to be sunny tomorrow.

| 11. | I am going to have a second interview.                      |
|-----|---|
| 12. | We are going to wait a long time at customs.                |
| 13. | She is going to sort the dirty laundry.                     |
| 14. | Bobby is going to tidy his room.                            |
| 15. | We are going to watch the scary movie about the werewolf.   |
| 16. | They are going to whistle the song.                         |
| 17. | They are going to bring shrimp to the party tomorrow night. |
| 18. | It is going to be good.                                     |
|     |   |

# The Indefinite Articles: A and An



The indefinite articles *a* and *an* are used with singular nouns. Use *a* before most nouns or adjectives that begin with a consonant. Use *an* before most nouns or adjectives that begin with a vowel.

| a cup        | a ball         | a class          | a bug                      |
|--------------|----------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| an empty cup | an orange ball | an English class | an ugly bug                |
| an egg       | an idea        | an owl           | an accident a bad accident |
| a brown egg  | a good idea    | a white owl      |                            |

Use a before nouns or adjectives that begin with a pronounced h, but use an before nouns or adjectives when the h is not pronounced.

a house a horse a hammer a hurricane an honor an hour an heir an honest mistake

Use a before nouns or adjectives if the vowel is pronounced as a consonant. The following words are pronounced with a y sound.

a union a university a uniform a utensil

The following words are pronounced with a *w* sound.

a one-hour class a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity



Rewrite the following sentences correctly by choosing **a** or **an**.

- We saw (a, an) horrible accident this morning.
- 2. This is (a, an) one-way street.
- 3. My uncle has (a, an) ostrich on his farm.
- 4. He is (a, an) American citizen.
- 5. I wear (a, an) uniform to work. \_\_\_\_\_

6. There was (a, an) earthquake last night. 7. You are (a, an) excellent student. 8. I need (a, an) hammer to fix the roof. 9. It was (a, an) useful tool. 10. I have (a, an) red apple in my lunch bag. 11. We bought (a, an) oil painting at the market. 12. This is (a, an) busy airport. 13. Give me (a, an) example, please. 14. We played the game for (a, an) hour and (a, an) half. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 43.2

Complete the following sentences with a or an.

| 1.  | I ate orange, banana, and peach today.                   |
|-----|--|
| 2.  | There is wild ostrich in the field.                      |
| 3.  | I want to live on island for month.                      |
| 4.  | Give her application, please.                            |
| 5.  | There is spider, ant, and fly in the kitchen.            |
| 6.  | You made excellent effort.                               |
| 7.  | Do you want oatmeal cookie?                              |
| 8.  | We have union at work.                                   |
| 9.  | Do you have horse?                                       |
| 10. | I had egg sandwich for lunch.                            |
| 11. | She married wealthy American.                            |
| 12. | We made apple cake, salad, and onion dip for the picnic. |
| 13. | Do you have yellow umbrella?                             |
| 14. | I saw owl, tiger, eagle, zebra, and elephant at the zoo. |
| 15. | She has blue eye and green eye.                          |

16. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ appointment?

17. She is \_\_\_\_\_ heir to the estate.

| 18. | I have idea.  |
|-----|---|
| 19. | He drew picture of unicorn.                             |
| 20. | We had ice storm and hurricane last year.               |
| 21. | I prefer to wear one-piece bathing suit to the beach.   |
| 22. | It is honor to meet you.                                |
| 23. | Is there university in your city?                       |
| 24. | That is honest opinion.                                 |
| 25. | I want ice cube and cherry in my drink.                 |
| 26. | We had easy test at school.                             |
| 27. | I need cup of olive oil.                                |
| 28. | There is oil lamp in the living room.                   |
| 29. | We saw dead octopus on the beach.                       |
| 30. | I found old sock under the bed.                         |
| 31. | It was expensive ring.                                  |
| 32. | There is pen, pencil, and eraser on the table.          |
| 33. | You are hero.   |
| 34. | You need envelope and stamp if you want to send letter. |
| 35. | My sister had baby; now I am aunt.                      |
| 36. | Is there elevator in the building?                      |
| 37. | It has long nose.                                       |
| 38. | We have uncle in Germany.                               |
| 39. | I want second opinion.                                  |
| 40. | Do you want ice-cream cone?                             |



## Irregular Verbs Table

Study and learn the past participles of the following irregular verbs.

| SIMPLE<br>FORM | SIMPLE<br>PAST | PAST<br>PARTICIPLE |
|----------------|----------------|--------------------|
| awake          | awoke          | awoken             |
| be             | was/were       | been               |
| beat           | beat           | beaten             |
| become         | became         | become             |
| begin          | began          | begun              |
| bend           | bent           | bent               |
| bet            | bet            | bet                |
| bite           | bit            | bitten             |
| bleed          | bled           | bled               |
| blow           | blew           | blown              |
| break          | broke          | broken             |
| bring          | brought        | brought            |
| broadcast      | broadcast      | broadcast          |
| build          | built          | built              |
| burn           | burned/burnt   | burned/burnt       |
| burst          | burst          | burst              |
| buy            | bought         | bought             |
| cast           | cast           | cast               |
| catch          | caught         | caught             |
| choose         | chose          | chosen             |
| come           | came           | come               |
| cost           | cost           | cost               |
| creep          | crept          | crept              |
| cut            | cut            | cut                |
| deal           | dealt          | dealt              |
| dig            | dug            | dug                |
| dive           | dived/dove     | dived/dove         |
| do             | did            | done               |
| draw           | drew           | drawn              |
| dream          | dreamed/dreamt | dreamed/dreamt     |
| drink          | drank          | drunk              |
| drive          | drove          | driven             |
| eat            | ate            | eaten              |
| fall           | fell           | fallen             |
| feed           | fed            | fed                |

| SIMPLE<br>FORM           | SIMPLE<br>PAST | PAST<br>PARTICIPLE |
|--------------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| feel                     | felt           | felt               |
| fight                    | fought         | fought             |
| find                     | found          | found              |
| fit                      | fit            | fit                |
| flee                     | fled           | fled               |
| fly                      | flew           | flown              |
| forbid                   | forbade        | forbidden          |
| forget                   | forgot         | forgotten          |
| forgive                  | forgave        | forgiven           |
| freeze                   | froze          | frozen             |
| get                      | got            | got/gotten         |
| give                     | gave           | given              |
| go                       | went           | gone               |
| grind                    | ground         | ground             |
| grow                     | grew           | grown              |
| hang                     | hung           | hung               |
| have                     | had            | had                |
| hear                     | heard          | heard              |
| hide                     | hid            | hidden             |
| hit                      | hit            | hit                |
| hold                     | held           | held               |
| hurt                     | hurt           | hurt               |
| keep                     | kept           | kept               |
| kneel                    | knelt          | knelt              |
| knit                     | knitted/knit   | knitted/knit       |
| know                     | knew           | known              |
| lay (to place, put down) | laid           | laid               |
| lead                     | led            | led                |
| leave                    | left           | left               |
| lend                     | lent           | lent               |
| let                      | let            | let                |
| lie (to lie down)        | lay            | lain               |
| light                    | lit            | lit                |
| lose                     | lost           | lost               |
| make                     | made           | made               |
| mean                     | meant          | meant              |
| meet                     | met            | met                |
| mistake                  | mistook        | mistaken           |
| pay                      | paid           | paid               |
| prove                    | proved         | proved/proven      |
| put                      | put            | put                |
| quit                     | quit           | quit               |
| read                     | read           | read               |
| ride                     | rode           | ridden             |
| ring                     | rang           | rung               |
| rise                     | rose           | risen              |
| run                      | ran            | run                |
| say                      | said           | said               |
| see                      | saw            | seen               |
| seek                     | sought         | sought             |
|                          | U              | Irregular          |

| SIMPLE                                  | SIMPLE        | PAST               |
|---|---------------|--------------------|
| FORM                                    | PAST          | PARTICIPLE         |
| sell                                    | sold          | sold               |
| send                                    | sent          | sent               |
| set                                     | set           | set                |
| sew                                     | sewed         | sewed/sewn         |
| shake                                   | shook         | shaken             |
| shave                                   | shaved        | shaved/shaven      |
| shear                                   | sheared       | sheared/shorn      |
| shed                                    | shed          | shed               |
| shine                                   | shined/shone  | shined/shone       |
| shoot                                   | shot          | shot               |
| show                                    | showed        | shown              |
| shrink                                  | shrank        | shrunk             |
| shut                                    | shut          | shut               |
| sing                                    | sang          | sung               |
| sink                                    | sank          | sunk               |
| sit                                     | sat           | sat                |
| sleep                                   | slept         | slept              |
| slide                                   | slid          | slid               |
| speak                                   | spoke         | spoken             |
| spend                                   | spent         | spent              |
| spill                                   | spilled/spilt | spilled/spilt      |
| spin                                    | spun          | spun               |
| spit                                    | spit/spat     | spit/spat          |
| split                                   | split         | split              |
| spread                                  | spread        | spread             |
| spring                                  | sprang        | sprung             |
| stand                                   | stood         | stood              |
| steal                                   | stole         | stolen             |
| stick                                   | stuck         | stuck              |
| sting                                   | stung         | stung              |
| strike                                  | struck        | struck             |
| swear                                   | swore         | sworn              |
| sweep                                   | swept         | swept              |
| swell                                   | swelled       | swelled/swollen    |
| swim                                    | swam          | swum               |
| swing                                   | swung         | swung              |
| take                                    | took          | taken              |
| teach                                   | taught        | taught             |
| tear                                    | tore          | torn               |
| tell                                    | told          | told               |
| think                                   | thought       | thought            |
| throw                                   | threw         | thrown             |
| understand                              | understood    | understood         |
| upset                                   | upset         | upset              |
| wake                                    | woke          | woken              |
| wake                                    | wore          | worn               |
| weep                                    | wept          | wept               |
| win                                     | won           | won                |
| write                                   | wrote         | written            |
| *************************************** | W1010         | ** 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 |

### The Present Perfect Tense



The present perfect tense is used when the time of a past activity is not important or is not known in the sentence. Use *has* or *have* and the past participle of the verb with both regular and irregular verbs to form the present perfect tense.

Contractions can also be used with the pronouns to create the present perfect tense.

| Regular   |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| SIMPLE PRESENT  | SIMPLE PAST  | PRESENT PERFECT  | CONTRACTION  |
| I work you work he works she works it works we work they work                   | I worked you worked he worked she worked it worked we worked they worked | I have worked you have worked he has worked she has worked it has worked we have worked they have worked | I've worked<br>you've worked<br>he's worked<br>she's worked<br>it's worked<br>we've worked<br>they've worked |
| Irregular   |  |  |  |
| SIMPLE PRESENT  | SIMPLE PAST  | PRESENT PERFECT  | CONTRACTION  |
| I take<br>you take<br>he takes<br>she takes<br>it takes<br>we take<br>they take | I took you took he took she took it took we took                         | I have taken you have taken he has taken she has taken it has taken we have taken                        | I've taken<br>you've taken<br>he's taken<br>she's taken<br>it's taken<br>we've taken                         |

The past participle of all regular verbs is the same as the simple past tense form (add -ed).

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to borrow  | borrowed    | borrowed        |
| to cheat   | cheated     | cheated         |
| to try     | tried       | tried           |
| to offend  | offended    | offended        |
| to work    | worked      | worked          |

The past participle of all irregular verbs has a different form and must be studied and learned. Refer to Lesson 44.

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to grow    | grew        | grown           |
| to teach   | taught      | taught          |
| to be      | was/were    | been            |
| to hear    | heard       | heard           |
| to take    | took        | taken           |

It takes a lot of practice to be able to correctly use the present perfect tense. Learn the past participles of all the irregular verbs by heart, and you will quickly be able to use this tense proficiently.



Rewrite the following sentences to create the present perfect tense using has or have and the past participle of the verb in parentheses. Use the two preceding verb lists to complete this exercise. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises.

- 1. They (to work) in Japan.
- 2. William (to grow) a lot since the last time I saw him.
- 3. My parents (to be) together for twenty years.
- 4. They (to borrow) a lot of money from their friends.
- 5. She (to teach) English in many different schools.
- 6. You (to offend) everybody in the office.
- 7. I (to hear) that noise in my car several times.
- 8. He (to cheat) on every one of his tests.
- 9. We (to try) to help them.
- 10. It (to take) a long time.



Complete the sentences that follow to create the present perfect tense. Use the contracted pronoun and the past participle of the verb in parentheses. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises.

| Reg | ul | ar |
|-----|----|----|
|     |    |    |

| SIMPLE PAST                          | PAST PARTICIPLE   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| offered                              | offered   |
| climbed                              | climbed   |
| used                                 | used  |
| discussed                            | discussed   |
| warned                               | warned  |
| accused                              | accused   |
| suffered                             | suffered  |
| helped                               | helped  |
| started                              | started   |
|                                      | 1 1 1   |
| thanked                              | thanked   |
| thanked                              | thanked   |
| thanked SIMPLE PAST                  | thanked  PAST PARTICIPLE  |
|                                      |   |
| SIMPLE PAST                          | PAST PARTICIPLE   |
| SIMPLE PAST forgave                  | PAST PARTICIPLE forgiven  |
| SIMPLE PAST  forgave bit             | PAST PARTICIPLE forgiven bitten                                       |
| SIMPLE PAST  forgave  bit  made      | PAST PARTICIPLE forgiven bitten made                                  |
| simple past forgave bit made sang    | PAST PARTICIPLE forgiven bitten made sung                             |
| forgave bit made sang saw            | past participle forgiven bitten made sung seen                        |
| forgave bit made sang saw tore       | past participle forgiven bitten made sung seen torn                   |
| forgave bit made sang saw tore chose | past participle forgiven bitten made sung seen torn chosen            |
|                                      | offered climbed used discussed warned accused suffered helped started |

- 1. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to break) the law many times.
- 2. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to use) this product before.
- 3. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to see) that movie several times.
- 4. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) many mistakes in his life.
- 5. It \_\_\_\_\_\_ (to bite) a few people.
- 6. You \_\_\_\_\_ (to offer) to help.
- 7. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ (to fly) many times.
- 8. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to suffer) enough.
- 9. You \_\_\_\_\_ (to tear) all the clothes I lent you.
- 10. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to forgive) you many times.
- 11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to know) Mary since high school.
- 12. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to accuse) me of that before.
- 13. It \_\_\_\_\_\_ (to start).

| 14. | We   | (to discuss) this many times.       |
|-----|------|-------------------------------------|
| 15. | I    | (to warn) you about that.           |
| 16. | It   | (to help) me to be a better person. |
| 17. | We   | (to choose) to live in the city.    |
| 18. | She  | (to sing) that song before.         |
| 19. | They | (to thank) us ten times.            |
| 20. | He   | (to climb) many mountains.          |

# The Present Perfect Tense: 46 **Negative Form**



Place *not* after *has* or *have* to create the negative form of the present perfect tense. Use the past participle of the verb in the negative form.

| I have been    | $\rightarrow$ | I have not been    | $\rightarrow$ | I have not been to Paris.     |
|----------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|-------------------------------|
| you have been  | $\rightarrow$ | you have not been  | $\rightarrow$ | You have not been there.      |
| he has been    | $\rightarrow$ | he has not been    | $\rightarrow$ | He has not been nice.         |
| she has been   | $\rightarrow$ | she has not been   | $\rightarrow$ | She has not been happy.       |
| it has been    | $\rightarrow$ | it has not been    | $\rightarrow$ | It has not been cold.         |
| we have been   | $\rightarrow$ | we have not been   | $\rightarrow$ | We have not been busy.        |
| they have been | $\rightarrow$ | they have not been | $\rightarrow$ | They have not been on a boat. |

The negative form of the present perfect tense can also be expressed with the contraction hasn't or haven't.

| I have not seen    | $\rightarrow$ | I haven't seen    | $\rightarrow$ | I haven't seen it.           |
|--------------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| you have not seen  | $\rightarrow$ | you haven't seen  | $\rightarrow$ | You haven't seen the play.   |
| he has not seen    | $\rightarrow$ | he hasn't seen    | $\rightarrow$ | He hasn't seen his sister.   |
| she has not seen   | $\rightarrow$ | she hasn't seen   | $\rightarrow$ | She hasn't seen her brother. |
| it has not seen    | $\rightarrow$ | it hasn't seen    | $\rightarrow$ | It hasn't seen me.           |
| we have not seen   | $\rightarrow$ | we haven't seen   | $\rightarrow$ | We haven't seen the movie.   |
| they have not seen | $\rightarrow$ | they haven't seen | $\rightarrow$ | They haven't seen Sara.      |

The past participle of all regular verbs is the same as the simple past tense form (add -ed).

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |  |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|--|
| to attract | attracted   | attracted       |  |
| to wait    | waited      | waited          |  |
| to accept  | accepted    | accepted        |  |
| to invent  | invented    | invented        |  |

The past participle of all irregular verbs has a different form and must be studied and learned. Refer to Lesson 44.

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to find    | found       | found           |
| to become  | became      | become          |
| to write   | wrote       | written         |

Rewrite the following sentences to create the negative form of the present perfect tense. Write your answer once with has not or have not and once with the contraction hasn't or **haven't**. Use the past participle of the verb in parentheses. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises.

| 1. | My teacher (to write) two books.              |
|----|---|
| 2. | I (to accept) the offer.                      |
| 3. | They (to invent) many fun games.              |
| 4. | The light (to attract) all the bugs.          |
| 5. | Joe and Lynn (to become) rich and famous.     |
| 6. | We (to find) that he works very hard.         |
| 7. | Cassandra (to wait) a long time for the news. |
|    |   |

| EXERCISE |
|----------|
| 46.2     |

Use your dictionary to find the meaning of the new vocabulary words needed for this exercise before you begin. Write the words in your language in the space provided.

| <br>chore    | chance   | team   |
|--------------|----------|--------|
| <br>prisoner | feelings | secret |
| tattoo       | Italy    |        |

Complete the sentences that follow by using the contraction hasn't or haven't and the past participle of the verb in parentheses. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises.

| Rea | ular |
|-----|------|
|     |      |

| INFINITIVE  | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to solve    | solved      | solved          |
| to waste    | wasted      | wasted          |
| to express  | expressed   | expressed       |
| to convince | convinced   | convinced       |

|     | to notice<br>to escape<br>to ask                                       | noticed<br>escaped<br>asked                   | noticed escaped asked                                  |  |
|-----|--|---|--|--|
|     | Irregular<br>INFINITIVE  | SIMPLE PAST                                   | PAST PARTICIPLE  |  |
|     | to give to have to keep to build to go to fall to beat to do to forget | gave had kept built went fell beat did forgot | given had kept built gone fallen beaten done forgotten |  |
| 1.  | We   | (to   | keep) it a secret.                                     |  |
| 2.  | She  | (to   | notice) your new tattoo.                               |  |
| 3.  | They   | (t  | o go) to Italy.  |  |
| 4.  | Laura  | (:  | to convince) me.                                       |  |
| 5.  | Mr. Lawrence   | (to build) three houses.                      |  |  |
| 6.  | I  | (to do) all my chores.                        |  |  |
| 7.  | Cindy  | (   | to express) her feelings.                              |  |
| 8.  | You  | (to   | waste) my time.  |  |
| 9.  | You  | (to   | give) it a chance.                                     |  |
| 10. | 1  | (to solve) the mystery.                       |  |  |
| 11. | Jarrod   | (to have) his vacation.                       |  |  |
| 12. | 1  | (to ask) for a raise twice.                   |  |  |
| 13. | My team  | (to beat) their team.                         |  |  |
| 14. | The prisoners  | (to escape) from jail.                        |  |  |
|     |  | (to fall) asleep.                             |  |  |
|     |  | (to forget) that it's your birthday.          |  |  |



# The Present Perfect Tense: **Question Form**

Place *has* or *have* before the subject to create questions with the present perfect tense. The past participle of the verb is used when forming questions with the present perfect tense.

| I have begun    | $\rightarrow$ | have I begun    | $\rightarrow$ | Have I begun to sing better? |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| you have begun  | $\rightarrow$ | have you begun  | $\rightarrow$ | Have you begun your course?  |
| he has begun    | $\rightarrow$ | has he begun    | $\rightarrow$ | Has he begun to realize it?  |
| she has begun   | $\rightarrow$ | has she begun   | $\rightarrow$ | Has she begun to understand? |
| it has begun    | $\rightarrow$ | has it begun    | $\rightarrow$ | Has it begun to melt?        |
| we have begun   | $\rightarrow$ | have we begun   | $\rightarrow$ | Have we begun to eat right?  |
| they have begun | $\rightarrow$ | have they begun | $\rightarrow$ | Have they begun to worry?    |

The past participle of all regular verbs is the same as the simple past tense form (add -ed).

| INFINITIVE   | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to apologize | apologized  | apologized      |
| to benefit   | benefited   | benefited       |
| to chew      | chewed      | chewed          |
| to follow    | followed    | followed        |
| to correct   | corrected   | corrected       |
| to wrap      | wrapped     | wrapped         |

The past participle of all irregular verbs has a different form and must be studied and learned. Refer to Lesson 44.

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to rise    | rose        | risen           |
| to hide    | hid         | hidden          |
| to show    | showed      | shown           |
| to bring   | brought     | brought         |
| to awake   | awoke       | awoken          |
| to pay     | paid        | paid            |
| to draw    | drew        | drawn           |
| to blow    | blew        | blown           |

Rewrite the following sentences to create the question form of the present perfect tense by placing **has** or **have** before the subject. Use the past participle of the verb in parentheses. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer.

| 1.  | You (to show) your report card to your parents. |
|-----|---|
| 2.  | The teacher (to correct) all the exams.         |
| 3.  | I (to bring) enough for everybody.              |
| 4.  | My dog (to chew) all the furniture.             |
| 5.  | It (to follow) me to school often.              |
| 6.  | We (to wrap) all the gifts.                     |
| 7.  | She (to blow) out all the candles on the cake.  |
| 8.  | They (to apologize) many times.                 |
| 9.  | He (to draw) many beautiful pictures for her.   |
| 10. | We (to benefit) from that.                      |
| 11. | It (to hide) the peanuts                        |
| 12. | I (to pay) all the bills                        |
| 13. | The sun (to rise).                              |
| 14. | I (to awake) the baby again                     |
|     |   |

#### EXERCISE

Rewrite the sentences that follow to create questions in the present perfect tense. Place has or have before the subject, and use the past participle of the verb in parentheses. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer.

#### Reaular

| 5            |             |                 |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|
| INFINITIVE   | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
| to invest    | invested    | invested        |
| to occur     | occurred    | occurred        |
| to iron      | ironed      | ironed          |
| to answer    | answered    | answered        |
| to park      | parked      | parked          |
| to disappear | disappeared | disappeared     |
| to manage    | managed     | managed         |
|              |             |                 |

| -     | 7     |
|-------|-------|
| Irrea | ıular |

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to leave   | left        | left            |
| to read    | read        | read            |
| to drive   | drove       | driven          |
| to meet    | met         | met             |
| to sleep   | slept       | slept           |
| to lose    | lost        | lost            |
| to feed    | fed         | fed             |

- 1. You (to iron) the clothes.
- 2. He (to drive) many miles.
- 3. Leora (to answer) all the questions.
- 4. They (to feed) the animals.
- 5. It (to occur) a few times.
- 6. I (to read) that book before.
- 7. We (to invest) all our money.
- 8. I (to park) here before.
- 9. You (to lose) a lot of weight. \_\_\_\_\_
- 10. He (to manage) the company alone. \_\_\_\_\_
- 11. Elvis (to leave) the building.
- 12. It (to disappear).
- 13. Robin (to meet) many famous people. \_\_\_\_\_
- 14. George (to sleep) late many times.

#### The Past Perfect Tense

The past perfect tense is used to describe a past action that occurred before another past action. For example, one past action occurred at 8:00 P.M., and the previous past action occurred at 7:00 P.M. Use *had* for all persons and the past participle of the verb to create the past perfect tense.

| I have heard    | $\rightarrow$ | I had heard    | $\rightarrow$ | I had heard the news.     |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| you have heard  | $\rightarrow$ | you had heard  | $\rightarrow$ | You had heard the guitar. |
| he has heard    | $\rightarrow$ | he had heard   | $\rightarrow$ | He had heard you scream.  |
| she has heard   | $\rightarrow$ | she had heard  | $\rightarrow$ | She had heard the song.   |
| it has heard    | $\rightarrow$ | it had heard   | $\rightarrow$ | It had heard the noise.   |
| we have heard   | $\rightarrow$ | we had heard   | $\rightarrow$ | We had heard everything.  |
| they have heard | $\rightarrow$ | they had heard | $\rightarrow$ | They had heard nothing.   |

The contraction  $\mathcal{U}$  is often used with the pronouns when using the past perfect tense.

| I <sup>3</sup> | 'd learned       | $\rightarrow$  | I'd learned my lesson.   |
|----------------|------------------|--|--|
| у              | ou'd learned     | $\rightarrow$  | You'd learned how to do it.  |
| h              | ne'd learned     | $\rightarrow$  | He'd learned the rules.  |
| S              | he'd learned     | $\rightarrow$  | She'd learned our names.   |
| it             | t'd learned      | $\rightarrow$  | It'd learned how to speak.   |
| V              | ve'd learned     | $\rightarrow$  | We'd learned to add.   |
| t]             | hey'd learned    | $\rightarrow$  | They'd learned to spell.   |
|                | y<br>h<br>s<br>i | you'd learned<br>he'd learned<br>she'd learned<br>it'd learned<br>we'd learned | you'd learned → he'd learned → she'd learned → it'd learned → we'd learned → |

The past participle of all regular verbs is the same as the simple past tense form (add -ed).

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to stop    | stopped     | stopped         |
| to expect  | expected    | expected        |
| to pass    | passed      | passed          |
| to explain | explained   | explained       |
| to die     | died        | died            |
| to decide  | decided     | decided         |

The past participle of all irregular verbs has a different form and must be studied and learned. Refer to Lesson 44.

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to sell    | sold        | sold            |
| to see     | saw         | seen            |
| to have    | had         | had             |
| to do      | did         | done            |

Rewrite the following sentences to create the past perfect tense. Use **had** and the past participle of the verb in parentheses. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises.

1. We (to decide) to stay home when they asked us to go out for dinner. 2. They (to sell) their boat when they bought the motorcycle. 3. He (to expect) to see you before you left. 4. I (to have) supper, so I only ate the dessert. 5. My grandmother (to die) when I was born. 6. The rain (to stop), so we went for a walk. 7. I (to do) the laundry when he brought me his dirty clothes. 8. She (to see) the movie before, so she went to bed. 9. The teacher (to explain) the lesson twice, but we didn't understand. 10. We (to pass) all our exams, so we celebrated all night.

Complete the sentences that follow using **had** and the past participle of the verb in parentheses. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises.

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to finish  | finished    | finished        |
| to order   | ordered     | ordered         |
| to divorce | divorced    | divorced        |
| to rescue  | rescued     | rescued         |

|     | to open                 | opened   | opened   |  |  |  |  |
|-----|-------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|     | to complete<br>to worry | completed<br>worried   | completed<br>worried                           |  |  |  |  |
|     | ·                       | Wolfied  | Wolfied  |  |  |  |  |
|     | Irregular               | CIMPLE DAGE  | DACT DADTICIDLE                                |  |  |  |  |
|     | INFINITIVE              | SIMPLE PAST  | PAST PARTICIPLE                                |  |  |  |  |
|     | to sweep                | swept  | swept  |  |  |  |  |
|     | to throw<br>to ring     | threw  | thrown   |  |  |  |  |
|     | to ring<br>to run       | rang<br>ran  | rung<br>run                                    |  |  |  |  |
|     | to run<br>to ride       | rode   | ridden   |  |  |  |  |
|     | to sing                 | sang   | sung   |  |  |  |  |
|     | to cut                  | cut  | cut  |  |  |  |  |
|     |                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1.  | She                     | (to throw) it ir   | n the garbage when you asked for it.           |  |  |  |  |
| 2.  | We                      | (to sing) the so   | ong several times, but we forgot the words.    |  |  |  |  |
| 3.  | l                       | (to open) the gift when I realized it was for you.           |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4.  | They                    | (to order) the pizza when we arrived.                        |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5.  | 1                       | (to sweep) the floor when he dropped the plate of cookies.   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 6.  | We                      | (to worry) all n   | night; then he finally called.                 |  |  |  |  |
| 7.  | She                     | (to ride) the horse many times before she fell and broke her |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | leg.                    | ≥g.  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8.  | I                       | (to run) five mile   | s when they cancelled the race.                |  |  |  |  |
| 9.  | He                      | (to complete) his homework, so he went to bed.               |  |  |  |  |  |
| 10. | The class               | (to finish) when we arrived.                                 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 11. | The bell                | (to ring) for twenty minutes before the janitor came to      |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | fix it.                 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 12. | We                      | (to rescue) the  | little girl in the water when the police came. |  |  |  |  |
| 13. | I                       | (to cut) my hair when he told me that he liked it long.      |  |  |  |  |  |
| 14. | They                    | (to divorce) but remained good friends.                      |  |  |  |  |  |
|     |                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |



### The Past Perfect Tense: Negative Form

Place *not* after *had* to create the negative form of the past perfect tense. The past participle of the verb is always used in the negative form.

| I had run    | $\rightarrow$ | I had not run    | $\rightarrow$ | I had not run after school.     |
|--------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|
| you had run  | $\rightarrow$ | you had not run  | $\rightarrow$ | You had not run very far.       |
| he had run   | $\rightarrow$ | he had not run   | $\rightarrow$ | He had not run the race.        |
| she had run  | $\rightarrow$ | she had not run  | $\rightarrow$ | She had not run with shoes.     |
| it had run   | $\rightarrow$ | it had not run   | $\rightarrow$ | It had not run across the road. |
| we had run   | $\rightarrow$ | we had not run   | $\rightarrow$ | We had not run together.        |
| they had run | $\rightarrow$ | they had not run | $\rightarrow$ | They had not run outside.       |

The negative form of the past perfect tense can also be expressed with the contraction *hadn't*.

| I had not opened    | $\rightarrow$ | I hadn't opened    | $\rightarrow$ | I hadn't opened the mail.    |
|---------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| you had not opened  | $\rightarrow$ | you hadn't opened  | $\rightarrow$ | You hadn't opened the book.  |
| he had not opened   | $\rightarrow$ | he hadn't opened   | $\rightarrow$ | He hadn't opened the letter. |
| she had not opened  | $\rightarrow$ | she hadn't opened  | $\rightarrow$ | She hadn't opened her gifts. |
| it had not opened   | $\rightarrow$ | it hadn't opened   | $\rightarrow$ | It hadn't opened its mouth.  |
| we had not opened   | $\rightarrow$ | we hadn't opened   | $\rightarrow$ | We hadn't opened the store.  |
| they had not opened | $\rightarrow$ | they hadn't opened | $\rightarrow$ | They hadn't opened it.       |
|                     |               |                    |               |                              |

The past participle of all regular verbs is the same as the simple past tense form (add -ed).

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to notice  | noticed     | noticed         |
| to follow  | followed    | followed        |
| to arrive  | arrived     | arrived         |

The past participle of all irregular verbs has a different form and must be studied and learned. Refer to Lesson 44.

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to fly     | flew        | flown           |
| to pay     | paid        | paid            |
| to see     | saw         | seen            |
| to hold    | held        | held            |



Rewrite the following sentences to create the negative form of the past perfect tense. Write your answer once with **had not** and once with the contraction **hadn't**. Use the past participle of the verb in parentheses. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises.

| 1. | He (to hold) a baby before today.                            |
|----|--|
| 2. | It (to arrive), so I called the store.                       |
| 3. | I (to notice) that you were standing there.                  |
| 4. | She (to pay) the phone bill, so I paid it.                   |
| 5. | They (to see) that movie before, and they really enjoyed it. |
| 6. | We (to fly) before, so we were very nervous on the airplane. |
| 7. | You (to follow) the instructions, and you made a mistake.    |
|    |  |

#### 49.2

Complete the sentences that follow by using the contraction **hadn't** and the past participle of the verb in parentheses. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises.

| 5          |             |                 |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
| to rain    | rained      | rained          |
| to smoke   | smoked      | smoked          |
| to talk    | talked      | talked          |
| to start   | started     | started         |
| to clean   | cleaned     | cleaned         |
| to borrow  | borrowed    | borrowed        |
| to wait    | waited      | waited          |
|            |             |                 |

|     | Irregular        |  |  |  |
|-----|------------------|--|--|--|
|     | INFINITIVE       | SIMPLE PAST  | PAST PARTICIPLE                        |  |
|     | to have          | had  | had                                    |  |
|     | to drive         | drove  | driven                                 |  |
|     | to drink         | drank  | drunk                                  |  |
|     | to hang          | hung   | hung                                   |  |
|     | to make          | made   | made                                   |  |
|     | to send          | sent   | sent                                   |  |
|     | to eat           | ate  | eaten                                  |  |
|     | to buy           | bought   | bought                                 |  |
|     | to give          | gave   | given                                  |  |
| 1.  | We               | (to eat) our br  | eakfast, so we were hungry.            |  |
| 2.  | She              | (to clean) the   | fridge, so I cleaned it for her.       |  |
| 3.  | It               | (to rain), so the  | streets were dry.                      |  |
| 4.  | She              | (to drive) on icy roads before, so she had a bad accident. |  |  |
| 5.  | My husband       | (to hang) the clothes on the clothesline, so I did it      |  |  |
|     | when I got home. |  |  |  |
| 6.  | You              | (to talk) abou   | t that before today.                   |  |
| 7.  | I                | (to buy) butter, so I went to the store again.             |  |  |
| 8.  | We               | (to send) the check, so we sent it this morning.           |  |  |
| 9.  | She              | (to have) her shower, so I left without her.               |  |  |
| 10. | They             | (to borrow)  | enough money, so we lent them \$1,000. |  |
| 11. | He               | (to give) me hi  | s address.                             |  |
| 12. | 1                | (to wait) a long t   | ime before it arrived in the mail.     |  |

candies.

13. My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ (to smoke) in three years, and he started again.

16. My wife \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) supper, so we went to a restaurant.

15. The movie \_\_\_\_\_ (to start), so we went to buy some chocolates and

14. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to drink) his juice, so I drank it.

### The Past Perfect Tense: Question Form



Place *had* before the subject to create the question form of the past perfect tense. The past participle of the verb is used when forming questions in the past perfect tense.

| I had worked    | $\rightarrow$ | had I worked    | $\rightarrow$ | Had I worked with you?        |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------------------------|
| you had worked  | $\rightarrow$ | had you worked  | $\rightarrow$ | Had you worked in Mexico?     |
| he had worked   | $\rightarrow$ | had he worked   | $\rightarrow$ | Had he worked for his father? |
| she had worked  | $\rightarrow$ | had she worked  | $\rightarrow$ | Had she worked in the city?   |
| it had worked   | $\rightarrow$ | had it worked   | $\rightarrow$ | Had it worked well?           |
| we had worked   | $\rightarrow$ | had we worked   | $\rightarrow$ | Had we worked together?       |
| they had worked | $\rightarrow$ | had they worked | $\rightarrow$ | Had they worked late?         |

The past participle of all regular verbs is the same as the simple past tense form (add *-ed*).

| INFINITIVE | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to plan    | planned     | planned         |
| to live    | lived       | lived           |
| to end     | ended       | ended           |
| to happen  | happened    | happened        |
| to taste   | tasted      | tasted          |
| to try     | tried       | tried           |

The past participle of all irregular verbs has a different form and must be studied and learned. Refer to Lesson 44.

| INFINITIVE  | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|
| to withdraw | withdrew    | withdrawn       |
| to know     | knew        | known           |
| to speak    | spoke       | spoken          |
| to see      | saw         | seen            |
| to make     | made        | made            |
| to have     | had         | had             |
| to wear     | wore        | worn            |
| to give     | gave        | given           |



Rewrite the following sentences to create the question form of the past perfect tense by placing **had** before the subject. Use the past participle of the verb in parentheses. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer.

| 1.  | He (to know) that you were my brother.                           |
|-----|--|
| 2.  | They (to withdraw) all the money from their savings account.     |
| 3.  | You (to try) to ski before you bought the skis.                  |
| 4.  | The play (to end) when she arrived.                              |
| 5.  | You (to give) him your phone number.                             |
| 6.  | Your aunt (to wear) this dress before.                           |
| 7.  | They (to taste) seafood before today.                            |
| 8.  | Richard and Jennifer (to plan) their vacation together.          |
| 9.  | Wade (to make) coffee for everybody.                             |
| 10. | You (to have) your breakfast before you went to school.          |
| 11. | The teacher (to speak) to you before she called your parents.    |
| 12. | It (to happen) before.   |
| 13. | You (to see) that woman before she came to your house.           |
| 14. | They (to live) in Ontario before they moved to British Columbia. |



Rewrite the sentences that follow to create the question form of the past perfect tense. Place **had** before the subject, and use the past participle of the verb in parentheses. You have already learned these verbs in previous exercises. Don't forget to include a question mark (?) in your answer.

| Regular  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| INFINITIVE   | SIMPLE PAST   | PAST PARTICIPLE                                     |
| to realize<br>to play<br>to work<br>to notice<br>to belong | realized<br>played<br>worked<br>noticed<br>belonged | realized<br>played<br>worked<br>noticed<br>belonged |
| to seem  | seemed  | seemed  |
| Irregular  |   |   |
|  |   |   |
| INFINITIVE   | SIMPLE PAST   | PAST PARTICIPLE                                     |
| •  | took found left took read paid was/were brought     | taken found left taken read paid been brought       |

- 1. She (to realize) what she did.
- 2. You (to take) the wrong bus.
- 3. It (to seem) fair to everyone.
- 4. Your boss (to bring) his dog to work before today.
- 5. Tony (to be) in the hospital before he had his operation.
- 6. They (to leave) the building before the fire started.
- 7. Jessica (to work) as a flight attendant before she became a nurse.
- 8. He (to take) the time to do it right.

| 9.  | They (to notice) where you put it.                                    |
|-----|---|
| 10. | You (to pay) cash for it.   |
| 11. | Maria (to find) a new job before she quit her old job.                |
| 12. | He (to play) hockey before he joined our team.                        |
| 13. | You (to read) the contract before you signed it.                      |
| 14. | It (to belong) to your grandmother before your mother gave it to you. |
|     |   |

### **Answer Key**

#### **1** To Be: Present Tense

- 1. The girl is pretty.
   2. I am ready.
   3. She is my friend.
   4. They are twins.
   5. The flowers are yellow.
   6. The flashlight is in the tent.
   7. The fridge and counter in the kitchen are dirty.
   8. I am tired today.
   9. We are busy.
   10. The toys are in the basement.
   11. The ribbons in my hair are pink.
   12. The kitchen is very small.
   13. The vacuum is in the closet.
   14. He is nice.
   15. The microwave oven is in the kitchen.
   16. The toy is on the floor.
   17. I am sick today.
- 1-2

  1. is 2. are 3. is 4. are 5. are 6. are 7. are 8. are 9. is 10. are 11. is 12. is 13. are 14. is 15. is 16. are 17. is 18. is 19. am 20. is 21. is 22. is 23. is 24. is 25. are 26. is 27. is 28. is 29. is 30. is 31. is 32. is 33. is 34. is

#### **2** To Be: Present Tense: Negative Form

- The cheese is not on the table. The cheese isn't on the table.
   She is not my sister. She isn't my sister.
   My neighbors are not Spanish. My neighbors aren't Spanish.
   My sister-in-law is not Italian. My sister-in-law isn't Italian.
   Diane is not pregnant. Diane isn't pregnant.
   The limes are not sour. The limes aren't sour.
   The bus is not empty. The bus isn't empty.
   The kids are not early for class today.
   The kids aren't early for class today.
   The drawers are not empty. The drawers aren't empty.
   It is not a nice city.
- 2-2
  1. isn't 2. aren't 3. isn't 4. aren't 5. isn't 6. isn't 7. aren't 8. aren't 9. aren't 10. isn't 11. isn't 12. isn't 13. aren't 14. aren't 15. isn't 16. isn't 17. isn't 18. aren't 19. isn't 20. aren't 21. aren't 22. isn't 23. aren't 24. isn't 25. isn't 26. isn't 27. am not 28. isn't 29. isn't 30. isn't 31. aren't 32. aren't 33. isn't 34. isn't

#### **3** To Be: Present Tense: Question Form

- 3-1

  Are the wheels in the garage?
  Is the sharpener on my desk?
  Is the woman very poor?
  Are the toothbrush and toothpaste in the bathroom?
  Is my bathing suit on the clothesline?
  Am I in your English class?
  Is it cold outside?
  Is he a policeman in the city?
  Are the coats on the floor?
  Are Johanne and Véronique in a meeting?
  Are the toys in the box downstairs?
  Are the cow and calf brown?
  Is the orange juice sweet?
  Are the frogs in the pond?
  Is the goldfish in the bowl?
  Are you serious?
  Is Marie French?
- 3-2

  1. Is 2. Are 3. Are 4. Is 5. Are 6. Is 7. Are 8. Is 9. Are 10. Are 11. Is 12. Am 13. Are 14. Is 15. Is 16. Are 17. Are 18. Is 19. Are 20. Are 21. Are 22. Is 23. Are 24. Is 25. Is 26. Are 27. Are 28. Is 29. Is 30. Is 31. Are 32. Am

#### 4 To Be: Past Tense

- 4-1 1. Joanie and Isabelle were at the beach. 2. He was my roommate. 3. It was in my pocket. 4. The snake was in the garden. 5. The diapers were in the bag. 6. She was a hairdresser. 7. Lisa was sick. 8. The kids were in the pool. 9. The bucket was full of minnows. 10. The washer and dryer were in the laundry room. 11. I was in my office. 12. The pencil was on the floor. 13. Sorry that I was late. 14. The flowers were for Jennifer. 15. My grandmother was in the hospital. 16. The exam was easy. 17. The crust was very thick. 18. The farm was very far.
- 4-2 1. was 2. were 3. was 4. were 5. was 6. was 7. was 8. was 9. were 10. were 11. was 12. was 13. were 14. was 15. were 16. was 17. were 18. was 19. were 20. was 21. were 22. was 23. were 24. was 25. were 26. was 27. was 28. were 29. was 30. was 31. were 32. were

### 5 To Be: Past Tense: Negative Form

- 5-1 1. The dress was not blue. The dress wasn't blue. 2. The couch in the living room was not dirty. The couch in the living room wasn't dirty. 3. They were not very fast. They weren't very fast. 4. It was not a good joke. It wasn't a good joke. 5. The raccoons were not in the tree. The raccoons weren't in the tree. 6. The slippers were not purple. The slippers weren't purple. 7. We were not at the play last night. We weren't at the play last night. 8. The plates were not in the dishwasher. The plates weren't in the dishwasher. 9. Karen was not a waitress for three years. Karen wasn't a waitress for three years. 10. My name was not on the list. My name wasn't on the list.
- 5-2 1. weren't 2. wasn't 3. wasn't 4. weren't 5. weren't 6. wasn't 7. wasn't 8. weren't 9. weren't 10. wasn't 11. wasn't 12. wasn't 13. wasn't 14. wasn't 15. weren't 16. wasn't 17. weren't 18. wasn't 19. weren't 20. wasn't 21. wasn't 22. wasn't 23. weren't 24. wasn't 25. wasn't 26. wasn't 27. weren't 28. wasn't 29. wasn't 30. wasn't 31. wasn't 32. wasn't

#### To Be: Past Tense: Question Form 6

- 6-1 1. Was it free? 2. Was the airplane very low in the sky? 3. Was the mall empty? 4. Were they in kindergarten together? 5. Was it bitter? 6. Were you angry at Susan? 7. Was the recipe easy? 8. Were the nail clippers in the drawer? 9. Were the curtains velvet? 10. Was the tablecloth dirty? 11. Was it enough? 12. Was she a flight attendant when she was young? 13. Were the ashtrays full? 14. Was the lady thin? 15. Was Claude seasick on the ship? 16. Were the crutches behind the door?
- 6-2 1. Was 2. Were 3. Was 4. Were 5. Was 6. Were 7. Was 8. Were 9. Was 10. Was 11. Was 12. Was 13. Were 14. Was 15. Were 16. Was 17. Were 18. Was 19. Were 20. Were 21. Was 22. Was 23. Were 24. Was 25. Was 26. Was 27. Was 28. Was 29. Was 30. Was 31. Were 32. Was

### 7 Exceptional Uses with the Verb To Be

- 7-1 1. My daughter is afraid of the dark. 2. Is Jason right? 3. She wasn't hungry for breakfast this morning. 4. Please open the windows. I am very hot. 5. I am not ashamed of the size of my shoes. 6. Cathy was thirty-three years old on her last birthday. 7. We were very thirsty after the race. 8. You are wrong again. 9. I am not right all the time. 10. Are you scared of thunder? 11. He wasn't afraid of the lightning. 12. I was cold this morning. 13. Are the guests hungry? 14. My mother and father were ashamed of my behavior. 15. Is your son scared of spiders? 16. I am not eighteen years old. 17. Bill is happy because he is right. 18. I am cold because of the snowballs in my pocket.
- 7-2 1. wasn't 2. Were 3. isn't 4. were 5. is 6. was 7. isn't 8. am 9. isn't 10. is 11. Was 12. is 13. Are 14. Was 15. Was 16. weren't 17. isn't 18. Were 19. wasn't 20. aren't 21. is 22. Was 23. aren't 24. am 25. are 26. Were 27. wasn't 28. is 29. isn't 30. was 31. is 32. Is 33. wasn't 34. are

### **Adjectives** 8

- 8-1 1. The cute little house is for sale. 2. It is a very sharp knife. 3. He is a tall, handsome man. 4. It was a cold, windy day yesterday. 5. I want a black leather jacket. 6. They drink prune juice every morning. 7. The big, green bug is in my shoe. 8. Elizabeth is a French teacher. 9. The ugly, hairy spider is in the kitchen. 10. Canada is a big, beautiful country. 11. The English test was hard. 12. He was a nice policeman. 13. Look at the beautiful white snow. 14. The little green frog is in the pond. 15. It was a huge whale.
- 8-2 1. It was a long, hard winter. 2. I need a new silver watch. 3. My right hand is sore. 4. I want the round balloons. 5. We like to watch old movies. 6. Look at the bright stars in the sky. 7. I like BBQ chips. 8. They want chocolate cake for dessert. 9. I love Mexican food. 10. He is a wealthy lawyer. 11. You draw funny pictures. 12. It was a long, boring meeting. 13. My left knee is swollen. 14. The kids like junk food. 15. We like to make rhubarb pies. 16. I hate strawberry yogurt. 17. We wear white shoes to school. 18. They are identical twins.

#### 9 To Have: Present Tense

- 9-1 1. He has a bad attitude. 2. The cat has white paws. 3. I have a peanut butter sandwich for lunch today. 4. Maria has a red velvet skirt. 5. We have a nice landlord. 6. Jessica has a terrible headache. 7. We have a good housekeeper. 8. She has a lot of dandruff. 9. Tony has very good skills. 10. The milk has a weird taste. 11. The house has a green roof. 12. It has a short tail. 13. We have a day off next week. 14. I have a warm sleeping bag. 15. My sister has purple eye shadow. 16. You have a nice smile.
- 9-2 1. have 2. has 3. has 4. have 5. has 6. have 7. has 8. has 9. has 10. have 11. has 12. has 13. has 14. have 15. have 16. has 17. has 18. has 19. have 20. have 21. has 22. have 23. has 24. have 25. has 26. have 27. has 28. has 29. has 30. have 31. has 32. has

### To Have: Present Tense: Negative Form **10**

- 10-1 1. My cat does not have fleas. My cat doesn't have fleas. 2. We do not have a satellite dish on the roof. We don't have a satellite dish on the roof. 3. I do not have a surprise for you. I don't have a surprise for you. 4. Jimmy does not have a fast snowmobile. Jimmy doesn't have a fast snowmobile. 5. We do not have many good books about antique jewelry. We don't have many good books about antique jewelry. 6. She does not have a lot of customers. She doesn't have a lot of customers. 7. My brother-in-law does not have a screwdriver. My brother-in-law doesn't have a screwdriver. 8. The clown does not have a big red nose. The clown doesn't have a big red nose. 9. I do not have long straight hair and bangs. I don't have long straight hair and bangs. 10. She does not have fantastic news. She doesn't have fantastic news.
- 1. don't 2. doesn't 3. doesn't 4. doesn't 5. don't 6. doesn't 7. don't 8. don't 9. don't 10-2 10. doesn't 11. don't 12. doesn't 13. doesn't 14. don't 15. doesn't 16. doesn't 17. don't 18. doesn't 19. don't 20. doesn't 21. don't 22. doesn't 23. doesn't 24. don't 25. doesn't 26. don't 27. don't 28. don't 29. don't 30. don't 31. don't 32. don't 33. doesn't 34. doesn't

### 11 To Have: Present Tense: Question Form

- 11-1 1. Do you have a pink eraser? 2. Does he have my phone number? 3. Do they have everything they need? 4. Do we have the same scarf? 5. Do I have rights? 6. Does Marissa have green flip-flops? 7. Do you have a huge turkey for Thanksgiving? 8. Do they have a lease until next year? 9. Does it have a funny taste? 10. Do you have two important appointments today? 11. Does the dove have white wings? 12. Do we have a day off next week? 13. Does David have a pager? 14. Does Juanita have a good recipe for meat loaf? 15. Do we have a tight deadline for the project? 16. Do they have a big celebration on Christmas Eve?
- 11-2 1. Do 2. Do 3. Does 4. Do 5. Does 6. Do 7. Does 8. Do 9. Does 10. Does 11. Do 12. Do 13. Does 14. Do 15. Does 16. Does 17. Does 18. Does 19. Do 20. Do 21. Does 22. Do 23. Does 24. Do 25. Does 26. Do 27. Do 28. Do 29. Do 30. Do 31. Do 32. Does

## **12** The Simple Present Tense

- 12-1 1. He smokes American cigarettes. 2. Karen blushes when she sees that boy. 3. I love caramel apple cake. 4. He cries like a baby. 5. It amazes me. 6. It jumps very high. 7. He kisses all the girls in school. 8. My cats scratch the furniture. 9. They help many people in the village. 10. The knights guard the king and castle in the kingdom. 11. He never flushes the toilet.
- 12-2 1. explains 2. whisper 3. crushes 4. buys 5. do 6. earn 7. works 8. manages 9. carry 10. owe 11. eats 12. fears 13. follow 14. work 15. drinks 16. pushes 17. spoils 18. dreams 19. drives 20. does 21. goes 22. own 23. obey 24. melts

## 13 The Simple Present Tense: Negative Form

- 13-1 1. My husband does not snore every night. My husband doesn't snore every night. 2. I do not believe your story about the giant monkeys. I don't believe your story about the giant monkeys. 3. Nancy and Yvan do not collect coins. Nancy and Yvan don't collect coins. 4. She does not speak several foreign languages. She doesn't speak several foreign languages. 5. It does not dislike fish. It doesn't dislike fish. 6. Ron does not swear and yell in class. Ron doesn't swear and yell in class. 7. Sara does not sell sewing machines. Sara doesn't sell sewing machines. 8. I do not trust you. I don't trust you. 9. We do not eat meat. We don't eat meat.
- 13-2

  1. doesn't 2. don't 3. don't 4. doesn't 5. don't 6. doesn't 7. doesn't 8. don't 9. doesn't 10. don't 11. doesn't 12. doesn't 13. don't 14. don't 15. doesn't 16. don't 17. doesn't 18. don't 19. doesn't 20. doesn't 21. doesn't 22. don't 23. doesn't 24. doesn't 25. don't 26. don't 27. doesn't 28. doesn't 29. don't 30. doesn't

## 14 The Simple Present Tense: Question Form

- 1. Does she skate in the morning? 2. Do they boil the vegetables? 3. Does he sleep in the afternoon? 4. Do the boys play chess at night? 5. Do you pay the mortgage on time? 6. Does she read the English newspaper? 7. Do they drive to work together? 8. Does it cost \$20 to travel by train to the city? 9. Does she scream when she watches horror movies? 10. Does she want a new hobby? 11. Does the king wear a red velvet crown? 12. Does Bobby play with toy soldiers? 13. Do you put salt and pepper in the dough? 14. Does Jackie touch everything in my office? 15. Do you see the fox in the woods?

## **15** Possessive Adjectives

- 1. She visits her relatives every summer. 2. We hide our money under the carpet in the master bedroom. 3. They keep their jewels in a jewelry box. 4. I wash my stairs with a sponge. 5. He passes all his exams. 6. She dresses her dolls in pink. 7. I open my mail after breakfast. 8. He bites his nails. 9. We rent our apartment. 10. It licks its paws. 11. I burn my marshmallows. 12. Jeff takes his pills in the morning. 13. The boys forget their homework every day. 14. He wipes his nose on his sleeve. 15. She dyes her hair. 16. The sailors believe their new submarine is better.
- 15-2 1. their 2. her 3. our 4. my 5. her 6. your 7. my 8. its 9. our 10. his 11. their 12. my 13. their 14. his 15. our 16. his 17. my 18. her 19. their 20. my 21. her 22. your 23. our 24. her 25. his 26. my

# **16** The Simple Past Tense

I used my hair dryer to dry my hair.
 We tried a new recipe last night.
 Thomas answered the phone.
 I noticed that your sweater was inside out.
 The car landed upside down in the ditch.
 She shared her snack with her friends at school yesterday.
 The minimum wage increased last year.
 Suzanne lied about her age.
 My company signed the lease for our building for another three years.
 The teacher challenged her students and rewarded them for their hard work.
 The eel killed the toad.

16-2 1. accepted 2. joined 3. moved 4. knocked 5. described 6. proved 7. denied 8. borrowed 9. watched 10. used 11. tidied 12. rained 13. painted 14. avoided 15. pushed 16. married 17. pleased 18. destroyed 19. served 20. obtained 21. arrested 22. ordered 23. decided 24. expected

## 17 The Simple Past Tense with Irregular Verbs: 1

- 17-1
   She blew on her soup because it was hot.
   The house shook a lot during the earthquake.
   They took the plane and spent their honeymoon overseas.
   I always felt sick when I was pregnant.
   He tore his pants when he fell.
   We bought a nice gift for our grandparents in Ireland.
   The kids slid down the mountain on their new toboggan.
   I did the dishes after supper.
   I cut my finger on the sharp saw.
   You broke my favorite cup.
   Your dog bit my ankle.
   Karen found a purse at the beach.
   I taught math at the high school last year.
- 17-2 1. spoke 2. began 3. gave 4. hung 5. saw 6. sat 7. stole 8. paid 9. drew 10. swore 11. dug 12. held 13. shot 14. heard 15. left 16. saw

## 18 The Simple Past Tense with Irregular Verbs: 2

- 18-1 1. We withdrew enough money for the whole month. 2. I caught a bullfrog and four tadpoles in the pond. 3. Salina rode a horse for the first time yesterday. 4. Robert, Claire, and Daniel built a huge sand castle on the beach. 5. Brandon bent the hanger to open the car door. 6. I drove to the post office to buy some stamps and envelopes. 7. The hunter forgot his rifle in the woods. 8. You woke your grandmother when you knocked on the window. 9. The sheep and lamb slept on the hay in the barn. 10. I had a bagel with bacon, tomato, cheese, and lettuce for lunch. 11. Camilie understood what the teacher taught in class today. 12. My mother froze the vegetables for the winter. 13. Dimitri lent the shovel to his neighbor. 14. The red team beat the blue team. 15. Laurent came to help us with the inventory in the warehouse.
- 18-2 1. brought 2. cost 3. rose 4. won 5. grew 6. put 7. meant 8. shut 9. chose 10. forgave 11. thought 12. lost 13. hurt 14. kept 15. sent 16. drank

# **19** The Simple Past Tense with Irregular Verbs: 3

- 19-1 1. She sang on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday at the concert in Montreal. 2. The house was dark because of the power failure, so we lit the candles. 3. The car spun out of control on the ice. 4. I read the newspaper in the evening on Saturday and Sunday. 5. My son fought at school on Tuesday and Thursday last week. 6. The phone rang in the middle of the night. 7. I knew that he was guilty of the crime.
   8. She met Sara at the liquor store. 9. Sorry, but I ate all the icing on your cake when you went to the bathroom. 10. I got a big raise at work last month. 11. We sold our parrot because he was too noisy.
   12. Alexandre threw the papers in the fire. 13. My pants fit me last year. 14. Carmen ran and hid under the bed. 15. We fed meat to the fox.
- 19-2 1. dealt 2. said 3. swept 4. made 5. stuck 6. hit 7. became, quit 8. wore 9. led 10. flew 11. wrote 12. swam 13. wept 14. told 15. stood 16. gave

## 20 The Simple Past Tense: Negative Form

- They did not watch the hockey game on their new big-screen TV. They didn't watch the hockey game on their new big-screen TV.
   I did not forget to tell him. I didn't forget to tell him.
   She did not waste my valuable time. She didn't waste my valuable time.
   Marcia did not report her income. Marcia didn't report her income.
   I did not shake the bottle of medicine. I didn't shake the bottle of medicine.
   My uncle did not shave his head. My uncle didn't shave his head.
   He did not apologize to his friend. He didn't apologize to his friend.
   We did not find clams and mussels in the sand on the beach. We didn't find clams and mussels in the sand on the beach.
   The police did not read the man his rights. The police didn't read the man his rights.
- He didn't prevent the accident.
   She didn't express her opinion.
   They didn't last three hours.
   They didn't go to see their granddaughter and grandson.
   They didn't save a lot of money for their trip to Greece.
   Patricia didn't lose her mittens, scarf, and hat at school.
   Sonia didn't translate the letter.
   I didn't buy a gift for her.
   Mario didn't find a black leather wallet in the snow.
   We

didn't put the leftovers in plastic bags. 11. I didn't tear my pantyhose. 12. I didn't know you were there. 13. He didn't deposit his pay in his savings account. 14. The plumber didn't fix the pipes, shower, and toilet in the bathroom upstairs. 15. I didn't clean the litter box and brush the cat this morning. 16. I didn't read my horoscope today. 17. The wind didn't bend the antenna. 18. Laura didn't grow two inches and gain ten pounds last year.

## 21 The Simple Past Tense: Question Form

- 21-1 1. Did you see the beautiful rainbow? 2. Did he offend you when he said that? 3. Did Jessica find a starfish on the beach? 4. Did the squirrel eat the peanuts? 5. Did he shoot a deer last weekend? 6. Did I indicate my overtime hours on my timesheet? 7. Did they remain friends after the argument? 8. Did Luke break the remote control for the TV? 9. Did she change her mind? 10. Did Brandon cheat when we played cards? 11. Did they weigh the fish on the scale? 12. Did you put garlic in the salad? 13. Did the people elect a new president? 14. Did he escape from prison? 15. Did it sleep under your bed?
- Did you take a picture of the sunset?
   Did she lock the safe?
   Did they attend the funeral?
   Did Barry order seafood?
   Did the chipmunk climb the tree?
   Did they ride the roller-coaster?
   Did she make the earrings?
   Did the divers find a treasure chest?
   Did the baby blow bubbles in the bath?
   Did they load the wagon?
   Did the rattlesnake bite his arm?
   Did the policeman put handcuffs on the thief?
   Did she convince you?
   Did you pick a flower for me?
   Did it appear to be true?
   Did you ask a question?
   Did the maid iron my apron?
   Did the dog lick my ice-cream cone?
   Did she draw a picture of a mermaid?
   Did Ravi lose his comb?

# 22 Prepositions: In and On

- 22-1 1. The garbage can is in the garage. 2. Do you see signs of life on the moon? 3. We will talk about it in the morning. 4. Mark moved here in 1997. 5. Don't throw your empty bottle on the ground. 6. We spent five days in Paris. 7. All the kids start school in September. 8. I will see you on Saturday. 9. They advertised it on the radio in California. 10. What do you have in your mouth? 11. I saw your picture in the newspaper in Ontario. 12. It's my birthday on Tuesday. 13. The bathroom is on the left. 14. We went for a ride on his motorcycle in the country. 15. She presented her project on trees.
- 22-2 1. on 2. in 3. in 4. on 5. on 6. in 7. on 8. on 9. in 10. on 11. on 12. on 13. in 14. in 15. on 16. in 17. in 18. in 19. in 20. in 21. on 22. in 23. on 24. in 25. on 26. in 27. on 28. in 29. on 30. in 31. on 32. on 33. on 34. in 35. on 36. in 37. on 38. on 39. in 40. in

## 23 There Is and There Are: Present Tense

- There are many meatballs and red peppers in the sauce.
   There is a whiteboard in my classroom.
   There are rocks in my boot.
   There is a phone book on her desk.
   There are gigantic footprints in the snow.
   There is a fire hydrant at the corner of my street.
   There are many caterpillars on the tree.
   There is a black stallion in the field.
   There are four piglets and three colts in the barn.
   There is a quilt on my bed.
   There are many seagulls on the beach.
   There is a new keyboard in the box.
   There are two sponges in the bucket.
   There are many dirty plates in the sink.
   There are six diamonds on my ring.
   There are a few gray squirrels in the tree.
- 23-2 1. are 2. is 3. is 4. is 5. are 6. is 7. is 8. is 9. are 10. is 11. are 12. is 13. is 14. are 15. is 16. is 17. are 18. is 19. are 20. is 21. are 22. is 23. are 24. is 25. are 26. is 27. is 28. are 29. is 30. are

## **24** There Is and There Are: Present Tense: Negative Form

There is not a lot of shade in the backyard. There isn't a lot of shade in the backyard.
 There are not three gold buttons on my coat.
 There are not two yellow folders on my desk.
 There is not a tricycle on the sidewalk.
 There isn't a tricycle on the sidewalk.
 There is not a thermometer in the bathroom. There isn't a thermometer in the bathroom.
 There are not three white rabbits in the cage.
 There are not

many angels in the picture. There aren't many angels in the picture. 9. There is not a scarecrow in the field. There isn't a scarecrow in the field. 10. There are not many dimes and nickels in the wishing well. There aren't many dimes and nickels in the wishing well. 11. There are not five quarters and a penny in my back pocket. There aren't five quarters and a penny in my back pocket.

24-2 1. isn't 2. isn't 3. aren't 4. isn't 5. aren't 6. isn't 7. isn't 8. isn't 9. aren't 10. isn't 11. isn't 12. aren't 13. isn't 14. aren't 15. isn't 16. aren't 17. isn't 18. aren't 19. isn't 20. isn't 21. isn't 22. aren't 23. isn't 24. aren't 25. isn't 26. aren't 27. isn't 28. isn't 29. aren't 30. isn't 31. aren't

#### **25** There Is and There Are: Present Tense: Question Form

- 25-1 1. Is there a vending machine in the cafeteria? 2. Are there enough life jackets in the boat? 3. Are there many skyscrapers in the city? 4. Is there a lifeguard at the pool? 5. Are there two owls in the tree? 6. Is there a diving board at the public pool? 7. Are there germs on my hands? 8. Is there a handle on my suitcase? 9. Is there a UFO in the sky? 10. Are there aliens in the UFO? 11. Are there candy canes on the Christmas tree? 12. Is there a ruler on my desk? 13. Are there enough place mats on the table? 14. Is there a measuring cup in the cupboard? 15. Is there a catfish in the pail? 16. Are there many hangers in the closet? 17. Is there a mirror in your purse?
- 25-2 1. Are 2. Is 3. Is 4. Are 5. Is 6. Is 7. Are 8. Is 9. Is 10. Are 11. Are 12. Are 13. Is 14. Is 15. Are 16. Are 17. Is 18. Is 19. Are 20. Is 21. Are 22. Are 23. Is 24. Are 25. Is 26. Are 27. Is 28. Is 29. Is 30. Are 31. Are 32. Is 33. Is 34. Are

#### 26 There Is and There Are: Past Tense

- 26-1 1. There was rust on the knife. 2. There were rules to follow. 3. There was a big sale at the mall, so I bought a scarf and shoes. 4. There was a CD player in my car, but someone stole it. 5. There were wet towels on the floor after he took his shower. 6. There was a hurricane in the southeast last week. 7. There were many stray cats in the alley. 8. There were beautiful fireworks in the sky last night. 9. There was a magnifying glass on the table. 10. There were two circles, three squares, and four triangles in the picture. 11. There was a diamond in her belly button. 12. There was a cork in the bottle of wine. 13. There were many straws in the cup on the counter in the kitchen. 14. There was a good story about you in the newspaper this morning. 15. There were a lot of dirty pots and pans in the sink. 16. There were many dimes, nickels, and quarters in my piggy bank. 17. There was gravy on my mashed potatoes but not on my meat. 18. There was a snowstorm in the northwest last night.
- 26-2 1. was 2. were 3. were 4. was 5. were 6. was 7. were 8. was 9. were 10. was 11. was 12. was 13. were 14. were 15. was 16. were 17. was 18. were 19. was 20. were 21. were 22. was 23. was 24. was 25. was 26. were 27. was 28. were 29. was 30. were 31. were 32. were 33. was 34. was

### **27** There Is and There Are: Past Tense: Negative Form

- 27-1 1. There was not a crack in my windshield. There wasn't a crack in my windshield. 2. There were not many shells and stones in the sand on the beach. There weren't many shells and stones in the sand on the beach. 3. There were not a lot of big heavy trucks on the bridge this morning. There weren't a lot of big heavy trucks on the bridge this morning. 4. There was not a peach in my lunch box. There wasn't a peach in my lunch box. 5. There were not two staplers on my desk in my office. There weren't two staplers on my desk in my office. 6. There was not a big brown beaver near the dam. There wasn't a big brown beaver near the dam. 7. There were not many wheelchairs in the hall in the hospital. There weren't many wheelchairs in the hall in the hospital. 8. There was not a wreath on the door. There wasn't a wreath on the door. 9. There were not many camels in the desert. There weren't many camels in the desert. 10. There was not a huge octopus in the boat. There wasn't a huge octopus in the boat. 11. There were not many fun games to play. There weren't many fun games to play.
- 27-2 1. wasn't 2. weren't 3. wasn't 4. weren't 5. wasn't 6. wasn't 7. weren't 8. wasn't 9. weren't 10. wasn't 11. wasn't 12. weren't 13. weren't 14. wasn't 15. weren't 16. wasn't 17. wasn't 18. wasn't 19. weren't 20. wasn't 21. weren't 22. weren't 23. weren't 24. weren't 25. wasn't 26. wasn't 27. weren't 28. wasn't 29. wasn't 30. wasn't 31. wasn't 32. weren't

## **28** There Is and There Are: Past Tense: Question Form

- Were there many knights to guard the castle in the kingdom?
   Was there a wooden outhouse behind our cottage in the country?
   Was there a picture of a skull and bones on the bottle?
   Were there many cigarette butts in the ashtray?
   Was there a car in my blind spot?
   Were there pink fuzzy dice on his rearview mirror?
   Was there a splinter in his thumb?
   Was there enough room on the bus for everybody?
   Was there a rude boy in your class last year?
   Were there two pretty blue bows in her hair?
   Was there a Canada goose near the lake?
   Was there a green carpet on the floor in the entrance?
   Was there a lot of garlic in the butter?
   Were there many people without a passport at the airport?
   Were there many thorns on the rose?
   Was there a garage sale last weekend?
   Were there many people on the roller-coaster?
   Was there a locksmith in the mall?
- 28-2 1. Were 2. Was 3. Was 4. Was 5. Was 6. Was 7. Was 8. Were 9. Were 10. Was 11. Was 12. Was 13. Were 14. Was 15. Was 16. Were 17. Were 18. Was 19. Were 20. Was 21. Were 22. Was 23. Was 24. Was 25. Was 26. Were 27. Was 28. Was 29. Were 30. Was 31. Was 32. Was 33. Were 34. Was

# 29 Prepositions: To and At

- 1. Please explain this to me. 2. The girls ate cake at the birthday party. 3. We saw Tony and his brother at the restaurant. 4. I sold my car to Mike. 5. I bought a muzzle for my dog at the pet store. 6. The funeral was at four o'clock. 7. We fed the apple cores to the raccoons. 8. I go to the gym daily. 9. We made a bonfire at the beach. 10. They drive to the city. 11. The elevator went to the basement. 12. We noticed that there was a policeman at the door. 13. He talked to the press after the meeting. 14. They gave the prize to my opponent. 15. Call me at 6:30 P.M. 16. We went to England and Spain last year.
- 29-2 1. at 2. at 3. to 4. at 5. at 6. to 7. to 8. at 9. at, at 10. to 11. to 12. to 13. at 14. to 15. to 16. at 17. to 18. at 19. to 20. at 21. to 22. at 23. to 24. to 25. at 26. to 27. at 28. at 29. to 30. at 31. to 32. at 33. at 34. to

## 30 The Present Progressive (Continuous) Tense

- The wolf is howling at the moon.
   Sheila is worrying now because her daughter is late.
   It is cold. We are shivering and we have goose bumps.
   They are crossing the lake in a canoe.
   The mayor is discussing the enormous potholes on the roads.
   She is pouring a soft drink for you.
   The nuns are sewing clothes and knitting slippers for the children.
   The policeman is wearing his bulletproof vest.
   My great-grandfather is living in a retirement home.
   They are suing the city.
   We are looking at the Big Dipper and the Little Dipper with our binoculars.
   Rollande is drinking water because she has the hiccups.
   My stepfather is repairing the bleachers in the stadium.
   It is snowing again.
   The dog is barking and growling at the groundhog outside.
- 30-2
  1. is dressing 2. are coughing 3. is tickling 4. am rewinding 5. is waving 6. is rubbing 7. is drooling 8. are sitting 9. are living 10. is delivering 11. are writing 12. is whispering 13. are breaking 14. is ringing 15. is winning 16. are rattling 17. is teasing 18. are annoying 19. is curling 20. are wasting 21. is juggling 22. is overflowing 23. is chewing 24. is putting 25. am sending 26. are surrounding 27. am leaving 28. is drawing 29. are melting 30. am giving

# 31 The Present Progressive (Continuous) Tense: Negative Form

- 1. He is not shouting at you. He isn't shouting at you. 2. They are not waiting downstairs for us. They aren't waiting downstairs for us. 3. The ship is not sinking. The ship isn't sinking. 4. The dog is not burying the bone in the sand. The dog isn't burying the bone in the sand. 5. We are not planting the seeds in the garden. We aren't planting the seeds in the garden. 6. I am not teaching in the elementary school this year. No contraction. 7. Mike is not stirring the paint with the paintbrush. Mike isn't stirring the paint with the paintbrush. 8. You are not wearing your seat belt. You aren't wearing your seat belt. 9. The crowd is not clapping and cheering. The crowd isn't clapping and cheering.
- 31-2
  1. isn't joking 2. aren't praying 3. aren't dancing 4. am not making 5. isn't putting 6. aren't dripping 7. isn't wiggling 8. aren't walking 9. isn't squeezing 10. am not separating 11. aren't ending 12. isn't correcting 13. aren't complaining 14. isn't boring 15. isn't aiming 16. aren't

solving 17. isn't working 18. am not starring 19. isn't winking 20. aren't freeing 21. isn't surrendering 22. aren't wrapping 23. isn't swallowing 24. isn't sharpening 25. isn't typing 26. aren't inviting

### The Present Progressive (Continuous) Tense: Question Form **32**

- 32-1 1. Are they talking about the newborn baby? 2. Is he hunting with a bow and arrow? 3. Is the saleslady offering you a good deal? 4. Is it walking backward or forward? 5. Are the employees adding their expenses for the business trip? 6. Is Mrs. Smith living in the suburbs? 7. Is Mr. Jones working in a gas station? 8. Is he slicing the pineapple? 9. Am I rocking the boat? 10. Is she sweating a lot? 11. Is my lip bleeding? 12. Are you bringing your compass when we go in the woods? 13. Are Bob and Tina on the beach enjoying the sunrise? 14. Am I eating your muffin? 15. Is Rosa making a cake for the surprise birthday party?
- 32-2 1. Is Tom spying on us? 2. Is he pushing the kids in the wheelbarrow? 3. Is the patient suffering a lot? 4. Is she cutting the crusty bread on the breadboard? 5. Is Jimmy throwing up in the bathroom? 6. Am I failing my science class? 7. Is Roger playing the bagpipes? 8. Are the children bursting the balloons? 9. Is the little boy showing me something? 10. Is the snail crawling on the tree? 11. Is Shane drawing a maple leaf? 12. Are the seals playing in the waves? 13. Are they swimming in the pool with their water wings? 14. Is Chris grating the cheese with the grater? 15. Are they kidding? 16. Is he shuffling the cards? 17. Is Grace sobbing in her bedroom? 18. Is the dog wagging its tail?

### **33** The Past Progressive (Continuous) Tense

- 33-1 1. The laboratory was testing the blood for AIDS and other diseases. 2. We were walking in the snow with our snowshoes. 3. The mechanic was lowering the car when it fell. 4. The girls were talking on the phone for two hours. 5. I was changing the lightbulb when I got a shock. 6. The kids were rolling down the mountain. 7. She was placing a wig on her head when I entered. 8. George was listening to music with his headphones. 9. Vance was covering his answers during the test. 10. We were buying a gift for the christening. 11. I was dropping a quarter in the tollbooth when he rammed the back of my car. 12. My daughter was blowing her nose. 13. The lights were glowing in the distance. 14. They were struggling to keep the files up-to-date. 15. We were dividing our time between the Grand Canyon and the casinos.
- 33-2 1. were blooming 2. was eating 3. was crushing 4. was warning 5. was welcoming 6. was putting 7. were wearing 8. were playing 9. were hiding 10. was reading 11. was wearing 12. was talking 13. were crying 14. was grieving 15. were weaving 16. was combing 17. was scolding 18. was working 19. were frightening 20. was gambling 21. were flying 22. was acting 23. were reaching 24. was sweeping 25. were hatching 26. was putting

### The Past Progressive (Continuous) Tense: Negative Form 34

- 34-1 1. She was not getting chemotherapy treatments for lung cancer. She wasn't getting chemotherapy treatments for lung cancer. 2. My stomach was not growling in class this morning. My stomach wasn't growling in class this morning. 3. We were not driving on the wrong side of the road. We weren't driving on the wrong side of the road. 4. He was not smiling at you. He wasn't smiling at you. 5. It was not nipping my ankle. It wasn't nipping my ankle. 6. The collar was not choking the dog. The collar wasn't choking the dog. 7. Tania was not succeeding in her course and she quit. Tania wasn't succeeding in her course and she quit. 8. The guests were not eating the potato salad. The guests weren't eating the potato salad. 9. They were not joking. They weren't joking.
- 34-2 1. wasn't snipping 2. wasn't working 3. weren't overdoing 4. wasn't relying 5. wasn't carrying 6. weren't making 7. wasn't carving 8. wasn't coping 9. wasn't slurring 10. weren't diving 11. wasn't tasting 12. weren't feeding 13. wasn't cleaning 14. wasn't flapping 15. weren't distracting 16. wasn't dripping 17. wasn't wearing 18. weren't sitting 19. weren't jumping 20. weren't rotting 21. wasn't hovering 22. wasn't petting 23. weren't counting 24. wasn't wearing 25. wasn't breathing 26. weren't laughing

# 35 The Past Progressive (Continuous) Tense: Question Form

- 1. Were the police stopping everyone at the corner? 2. Was my yellow rubber duck floating in the bath? 3. Was the meat thawing on the counter? 4. Were the wounds on his body healing? 5. Was she hoping for a new nightgown for Christmas? 6. Was the ice cracking on the lake? 7. Was the beautiful peacock attracting a lot of attention? 8. Was she buying watermelon and corn on the cob for the picnic? 9. Were the actors rehearsing for the play? 10. Was it drifting on the sea? 11. Were they using matches to light the candles on the cake? 12. Were you swimming with goggles and a snorkel? 13. Was Réal grabbing the bull by the horns? 14. Was she taking vitamins during her pregnancy? 15. Was the housekeeper dusting the furniture?
- Was she starting her car?
   Were they begging us to stay for supper?
   Were we closing the store early?
   Were they walking barefoot on the pebbles?
   Was the dog panting?
   Were you scratching your elbow?
   Was she measuring her waist and hips?
   Was Danny daring me to jump in the lake?
   Was it eating my peanut butter sandwich?
   Were you ripping my sweater?
   Was Gary omitting the details?
   Was it following me?
   Were the detectives investigating the crime?
   Was he spitting on the sidewalk?
   Were they raising goats?
   Were you pretending to be a big ape?
   Was I reading the right letter?
   Was the ox pulling the cart?

# **36** Prepositions: From and Of

- We gave her a beautiful bouquet of flowers.
   I got a toothbrush from my dentist.
   He is a member of the hockey hall of fame.
   She sent me a postcard from Canada.
   Peter is a man of many talents.
   We heard voices from beyond the bushes.
   He called me from a pay phone.
   I need a cup of sugar for this recipe.
   Is that guy from Mexico?
   I work from Monday to Thursday. I don't work Friday.
   Do you want a glass of beer?
   She is a woman of value in our company.
   The cat jumped from the couch to the window.
   Open the gift from me.
- 36-2

  1. of 2. of 3. from 4. of 5. from 6. of 7. of 8. from 9. of 10. of, from 11. of 12. of 13. from 14. of 15. from 16. from 17. of 18. of 19. of 20. from 21. of 22. from 23. from 24. from 25. of 26. from 27. of 28. from 29. from 30. of 31. of 32. from 33. of 34. from 35. of 36. from 37. of 38. from

## **37** Will: Future Tense

- I will climb to the top of the lighthouse to see the ships.
   You will become a rich and famous author.
   The government will reduce taxes next year.
   The fairy will grant you several wishes.
   My mother will make a cherry pie.
   We will study the brain in my science class.
   They will enlarge the picture of the swordfish that they caught.
   We will gather blueberries, strawberries, and raspberries to make jam.
   He will hug and kiss you when he sees you.
   Brad will introduce me to his parents tomorrow night.
   We will ship the package to you this afternoon.
   Mary will envy your friendship with Paul.
   The government will ban tobacco in all public places.
   She will pamper her new baby.
   I will flip the pancakes now.
- 1. will calculate 2. will balance 3. will develop 4. will concentrate 5. will last 6. will postpone 7. will learn 8. will tame 9. will tell 10. will wonder 11. will order 12. will move 13. will miss 14. will bake 15. will continue 16. will be 17. will nod 18. will use 19. will get 20. will stimulate 21. will cause 22. will donate 23. will inform 24. will share

## 38 Will: Future Tense: Negative Form

- He will not declare bankruptcy. He won't declare bankruptcy.
   My neighbor will not trim his bushes.
   John will not trim his sideburns. John won't trim his sideburns.
   Anna will not go on a blind date. Anna won't go on a blind date.
   You will not recognize me with my wig. You won't recognize me with my wig.
   They will not allow you to stay overnight.
   We will not celebrate on New Year's Eve. We won't celebrate on New Year's Eve.
   The man will not confess to the murder. The man won't confess to the murder.
   I will not pawn my guitar. I won't pawn my guitar.
- 38-2 1. won't ruin 2. won't clog 3. won't issue 4. won't improve 5. won't guess 6. won't discuss 7. won't benefit 8. won't delay 9. won't compensate 10. won't allow 11. won't cure 12. won't

purchase 13. won't listen 14. won't attempt 15. won't wear 16. won't sign 17. won't make 18. won't operate 19. won't betray 20. won't remove 21. won't have 22. won't live 23. won't mean 24. won't tolerate 25. won't hand 26. won't fail

### 39 Will: Future Tense: Question Form

- 39-1 1. Will the snow disappear in the spring? 2. Will your mother punish you for that? 3. Will the police accuse Sara? 4. Will you spell your last name for me? 5. Will she throw her old pajamas in the garbage? 6. Will he measure it with his brand-new tape measure? 7. Will Bobby show the judges his muscles? 8. Will it poison you with its fangs? 9. Will they mention it to their foreman? 10. Will the gardener spray the wasps and bees with poison? 11. Will they rescue the eagles on the island? 12. Will your boyfriend partake in the writing competition? 13. Will we travel a lot next year? 14. Will it kick me? 15. Will she buy a new ironing board and toaster for her apartment?
- 39-2 1. Will it arrive on time? 2. Will he publish his report? 3. Will they blame me? 4. Will we be in rush hour traffic? 5. Will our country ban the sale of ivory? 6. Will Sheila stick the magnet on the fridge? 7. Will you close your mouth when you eat? 8. Will we produce a lot of corn this year? 9. Will our company expand next year? 10. Will it rain tomorrow? 11. Will we trade our trailer for a boat? 12. Will he pause the movie for a few minutes? 13. Will I regret it? 14. Will it grind the coffee beans? 15. Will you require stitches in your knee? 16. Will the roof sag with all the snow on it? 17. Will they bid on the famous painting? 18. Will I gain weight if I eat this? 19. Will he respond? 20. Will I have enough time?

### 40 Be Going To: Future Tense

- 40-1 1. I am going to hurry because I don't want to miss my bus. 2. He drank too much, and now he is going to vomit. 3. You are going to dirty my floor with your muddy shoes. 4. The sun is going to shine all day today. 5. I am going to wait for you in the lobby downstairs. 6. We are going to sell our waterbed in our garage sale. 7. The kids are going to swim in the shallow end of the pool. 8. The adults are going to dive in the deep end of the pool. 9. You are going to injure your back if you lift that heavy box. 10. It is going to create problems in the office. 11. I am going to spread the jam on my toast. 12. My manager is going to check his schedule for next week. 13. You are going to be upset if the audience doesn't applaud. 14. He is going to surprise her with a diamond ring. 15. She is going to remove your name from the list.
- 40-2 1. are, assume 2. is, suggest 3. is, tighten 4. am, clip 5. are, observe 6. am, give 7. is, seem 8. are, remind 9. are, admit 10. is, be 11. is, ask 12. am, tap 13. are, commute 14. are, skip 15. am, put 16. is, marry 17. is, occur 18. are, charge 19. is, belong 20. is, vanish 21. am, buy 22. are, be

### 41 Be Going To: Future Tense: Negative Form

- 41-1 1. My company is not going to announce cutbacks for the new year. My company isn't going to announce cutbacks for the new year. 2. We are not going to submit the report in the morning. We aren't going to submit the report in the morning. 3. I am not going to withdraw all my money. No contraction. 4. They are not going to invest the funds in the stock market. They aren't going to invest the funds in the stock market. 5. This experience is not going to haunt me for the rest of my life. This experience isn't going to haunt me for the rest of my life. 6. Annie is not going to chill the wine before she serves it. Annie isn't going to chill the wine before she serves it. 7. The ostrich is not going to attack you. The ostrich isn't going to attack you. 8. You are not going to reuse the bags. You aren't going to reuse the bags. 9. He is not going to divorce his wife. He isn't going to divorce his wife.
- 41-2 1. aren't 2. isn't 3. aren't 4. aren't 5. aren't 6. isn't 7. am not 8. aren't 9. isn't 10. aren't 11. isn't 12. am not 13. isn't 14. aren't 15. aren't 16. am not 17. isn't 18. aren't 19. isn't 20. isn't 21. aren't 22. isn't 23. isn't 24. aren't 25. aren't 26. isn't 27. isn't 28. aren't

### 42 Be Going To: Future Tense: Question Form

42-1 1. Is he going to share this knowledge with the world? 2. Is she going to cooperate with us? 3. Are you going to provide me with a good explanation? 4. Are they going to immigrate to the United States in

- August? 5. Is it going to turn green when I put it in water? 6. Is the immigration office going to process my file in July? 7. Are my parents going to supply me with my school supplies in September? 8. Am I going to drain the vegetables with this? 9. Are they going to complete the project in November or December? 10. Is she going to apply for a new job in October? 11. Are you going to scrub the bathtub now? 12. Are the cows and horses going to graze in the field? 13. Are you going to dip the apple in honey? 14. Are we going to store the snowblower in the garage during the summer? 15. Is the teacher going to talk about war and peace in history class today?
- 42-2 1. Is he going to promise to be good? 2. Are you going to wish for a car again? 3. Am I going to compete with you? 4. Is she going to rest on the couch? 5. Are you going to fake that you are sick? 6. Is he going to break the icicles with the shovel? 7. Is Sonia going to buy new oven mitts? 8. Is the insurance company going to assess the damage? 9. Are you going to cry? 10. Is it going to be sunny tomorrow? 11. Am I going to have a second interview? 12. Are we going to wait a long time at customs? 13. Is she going to sort the dirty laundry? 14. Is Bobby going to tidy his room? 15. Are we going to watch the scary movie about the werewolf? 16. Are they going to whistle the song? 17. Are they going to bring shrimp to the party tomorrow night? 18. Is it going to be good?

#### 43 The Indefinite Articles: A and An

- 43-1 1. We saw a horrible accident this morning. 2. This is a one-way street. 3. My uncle has an ostrich on his farm. 4. He is an American citizen. 5. I wear a uniform to work. 6. There was an earthquake last night. 7. You are an excellent student. 8. I need a hammer to fix the roof. 9. It was a useful tool. 10. I have a red apple in my lunch bag. 11. We bought an oil painting at the market. 12. This is a busy airport. 13. Give me an example, please. 14. We played the game for an hour and a half.
- 43-2 1. an, a, a 2. a 3. an, a 4. an 5. a, an, a 6. an 7. an 8. a 9. a 10. an 11. a 12. an, a, an 13. a 14. an, a, an, a, an 15. a, a 16. an 17. an 18. an 19. a, a 20. an, a 21. a 22. an 23. a 24. an 25. an, a 26. an 27. a 28. an 29. a 30. an 31. an 32. a, a, an 33. a 34. an, a, a 35. a, an 36. an 37. a 38. an 39. a 40. an

### 44 Irregular Verbs Table

No exercises

### 45 The Present Perfect Tense

- 45-1 1. They have worked in Japan. 2. William has grown a lot since the last time I saw him. 3. My parents have been together for twenty years. 4. They have borrowed a lot of money from their friends. 5. She has taught English in many different schools. 6. You have offended everybody in the office. 7. I have heard that noise in my car several times. 8. He has cheated on every one of his tests. 9. We have tried to help them. 10. It has taken a long time.
- 45-2 1. has broken 2. have used 3. have seen 4. has made 5. has bitten 6. have offered 7. have flown 8. have suffered 9. have torn 10. has forgiven 11. have known 12. has accused 13. has started 14. have discussed 15. have warned 16. has helped 17. have chosen 18. has sung 19. have thanked 20. has climbed

### 46 The Present Perfect Tense: Negative Form

- 46-1 1. My teacher has not written two books. My teacher hasn't written two books. 2. I have not accepted the offer. I haven't accepted the offer. 3. They have not invented many fun games. They haven't invented many fun games. 4. The light has not attracted all the bugs. The light hasn't attracted all the bugs. 5. Joe and Lynn have not become rich and famous. Joe and Lynn haven't become rich and famous. 6. We have not found that he works very hard. We haven't found that he works very hard. 7. Cassandra has not waited a long time for the news. Cassandra hasn't waited a long time for the news.
- 46-2 1. haven't kept 2. hasn't noticed 3. haven't gone 4. hasn't convinced 5. hasn't built 6. haven't done 7. hasn't expressed 8. haven't wasted 9. haven't given 10. haven't solved 11. hasn't had 12. haven't asked 13. hasn't beaten 14. haven't escaped 15. hasn't fallen 16. hasn't forgotten

### 47 The Present Perfect Tense: Question Form

- 47-1 1. Have you shown your report card to your parents? 2. Has the teacher corrected all the exams? 3. Have I brought enough for everybody? 4. Has my dog chewed all the furniture? 5. Has it followed me to school often? 6. Have we wrapped all the gifts? 7. Has she blown out all the candles on the cake? 8. Have they apologized many times? 9. Has he drawn many beautiful pictures for her? 10. Have we benefited from that? 11. Has it hidden the peanuts? 12. Have I paid all the bills? 13. Has the sun risen? 14. Have I awoken the baby again?
- 47-2 1. Have you ironed the clothes? 2. Has he driven many miles? 3. Has Leora answered all the questions? 4. Have they fed the animals? 5. Has it occurred a few times? 6. Have I read that book before? 7. Have we invested all our money? 8. Have I parked here before? 9. Have you lost a lot of weight? 10. Has he managed the company alone? 11. Has Elvis left the building? 12. Has it disappeared? 13. Has Robin met many famous people? 14. Has George slept late many times?

#### 48 The Past Perfect Tense

- 48-1 1. We had decided to stay home when they asked us to go out for dinner. 2. They had sold their boat when they bought the motorcycle. 3. He had expected to see you before you left. 4. I had had supper, so I only ate the dessert. 5. My grandmother had died when I was born. 6. The rain had stopped, so we went for a walk. 7. I had done the laundry when he brought me his dirty clothes. 8. She had seen the movie before, so she went to bed. 9. The teacher had explained the lesson twice, but we didn't understand. 10. We had passed all our exams, so we celebrated all night.
- 48-2 1. had thrown 2. had sung 3. had opened 4. had ordered 5. had swept 6. had worried 7. had ridden 8. had run 9. had completed 10. had finished 11. had rung 12. had rescued 13. had cut 14. had divorced

### 49 The Past Perfect Tense: Negative Form

- 49-1 1. He had not held a baby before today. He hadn't held a baby before today. 2. It had not arrived, so I called the store. It hadn't arrived, so I called the store. 3. I had not noticed that you were standing there. I hadn't noticed that you were standing there. 4. She had not paid the phone bill, so I paid it. She hadn't paid the phone bill, so I paid it. 5. They had not seen that movie before, and they really enjoyed it. They hadn't seen that movie before, and they really enjoyed it. 6. We had not flown before, so we were very nervous on the airplane. We hadn't flown before, so we were very nervous on the airplane. 7. You had not followed the instructions, and you made a mistake. You hadn't followed the instructions, and you made a mistake.
- 49-2 1. hadn't eaten 2. hadn't cleaned 3. hadn't rained 4. hadn't driven 5. hadn't hung 6. hadn't talked 7. hadn't bought 8. hadn't sent 9. hadn't had 10. hadn't borrowed 11. hadn't given 12. hadn't waited 13. hadn't smoked 14. hadn't drunk 15. hadn't started 16. hadn't made

### **50** The Past Perfect Tense: Question Form

- 50-1 1. Had he known that you were my brother? 2. Had they withdrawn all the money from their savings account? 3. Had you tried to ski before you bought the skis? 4. Had the play ended when she arrived? 5. Had you given him your phone number? 6. Had your aunt worn this dress before? 7. Had they tasted seafood before today? 8. Had Richard and Jennifer planned their vacation together? 9. Had Wade made coffee for everybody? 10. Had you had your breakfast before you went to school? 11. Had the teacher spoken to you before she called your parents? 12. Had it happened before? 13. Had you seen that woman before she came to your house? 14. Had they lived in Ontario before they moved to British Columbia?
- 50-2 1. Had she realized what she did? 2. Had you taken the wrong bus? 3. Had it seemed fair to everyone? 4. Had your boss brought his dog to work before today? 5. Had Tony been in the hospital before he had his operation? 6. Had they left the building before the fire started? 7. Had Jessica worked as a flight attendant before she became a nurse? 8. Had he taken the time to do it right? 9. Had they noticed where you put it? 10. Had you paid cash for it? 11. Had Maria found a new job before she quit her old job? 12. Had he played hockey before he joined our team? 13. Had you read the contract before you signed it? 14. Had it belonged to your grandmother before your mother gave it to you?